

More Math Into L^AT_EX

4th Edition

George Grätzer

More Math Into L^AT_EX

4th Edition

Foreword by
Rainer Schöpf
L^AT_EX3 team



Springer

George Grätzer
Department of Mathematics
University of Manitoba
Winnipeg, MB R3T 2N2
Canada
gratzer@ms.umanitoba.ca

Cover design by Mary Burgess.
Typeset by the author in L^AT_EX.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2007923503

ISBN-13: 978-387-32289-6

e-ISBN-13: 978-0-387-68852-7

Printed on acid-free paper.

©2007 Springer Science+Business Media, LLC

All rights reserved. This work may not be translated or copied in whole or in part without the written permission of the publisher (Springer Science+Business Media LLC, 233 Spring Street, New York, NY 10013, USA) and the author, except for brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis. Use in connection with any form of information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed is forbidden.

The use in this publication of trade names, trademarks, service marks and similar terms, even if they are not identified as such, is not to be taken as an expression of opinion as to whether or not they are subject to proprietary rights.

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

springer.com

(HP)

To the **Volunteers**
without whose dedication over 15 years,
this book could not have been done

and to my four grandchildren
Danny (11),
Anna (8),
Emma (2),
and **Kate** (0)

Short Contents

Foreword	xxi
Preface to the Fourth Edition	xxv
Introduction	xxix
I Short Course	1
1 Your L^AT_EX	3
2 Typing text	7
3 Typing math	17
4 Your first article and presentation	35
II Text and Math	59
5 Typing text	61
6 Text environments	117
7 Typing math	151
8 More math	187
9 Multiline math displays	207

III Document Structure	245
10 L^AT_EX documents	247
11 The AMS article document class	271
12 Legacy document classes	303
IV Presentations and PDF Documents	315
13 PDF documents	317
14 Presentations	325
V Customization	361
15 Customizing L^AT_EX	363
VI Long Documents	419
16 BIBL^EX	421
17 MakeIndex	449
18 Books in L^AT_EX	465
A Installation	489
B Math symbol tables	501
C Text symbol tables	515
D Some background	521
E L^AT_EX and the Internet	537
F PostScript fonts	543
G L^AT_EX localized	547
H Final thoughts	551
Bibliography	557
Index	561

Contents

Foreword	xxi
Preface to the Fourth Edition	xxv
Acknowledgments	xxvii
Introduction	xxix
Is this book for you?	xxix
I Short Course	1
1 Your L^AT_EX	3
1.1 Your computer	3
1.2 Sample files	4
1.3 Editing cycle	4
1.4 Three productivity tools	5
2 Typing text	7
2.1 The keyboard	8
2.2 Your first note	9
2.3 Lines too wide	12
2.4 More text features	13
3 Typing math	17
3.1 A note with math	17
3.2 Errors in math	19
3.3 Building blocks of a formula	22
3.4 Displayed formulas	27
3.4.1 Equations	27

3.4.2	Aligned formulas	30
3.4.3	Cases	33
4	Your first article and presentation	35
4.1	The anatomy of an article	35
4.1.1	The typeset sample article	41
4.2	An article template	44
4.2.1	Editing the top matter	44
4.2.2	Sectioning	46
4.2.3	Invoking proclamations	46
4.2.4	Inserting references	47
4.3	On using L ^A T _E X	48
4.3.1	L ^A T _E X error messages	48
4.3.2	Logical and visual design	52
4.4	Converting an article to a presentation	53
4.4.1	Preliminary changes	53
4.4.2	Making the pages	55
4.4.3	Fine tuning	55
II	Text and Math	59
5	Typing text	61
5.1	The keyboard	62
5.1.1	Basic keys	62
5.1.2	Special keys	63
5.1.3	Prohibited keys	63
5.2	Words, sentences, and paragraphs	64
5.2.1	Spacing rules	64
5.2.2	Periods	66
5.3	Commanding L ^A T _E X	67
5.3.1	Commands and environments	68
5.3.2	Scope	71
5.3.3	Types of commands	73
5.4	Symbols not on the keyboard	74
5.4.1	Quotation marks	75
5.4.2	Dashes	75
5.4.3	Ties or nonbreakable spaces	76
5.4.4	Special characters	76
5.4.5	Ellipses	78
5.4.6	Ligatures	79
5.4.7	Accents and symbols in text	79
5.4.8	Logos and dates	80

5.4.9	Hyphenation	82
5.5	Comments and footnotes	85
5.5.1	Comments	85
5.5.2	Footnotes	87
5.6	Changing font characteristics	88
5.6.1	Basic font characteristics	88
5.6.2	Document font families	89
5.6.3	Shape commands	90
5.6.4	Italic corrections	91
5.6.5	Series	93
5.6.6	Size changes	93
5.6.7	Orthogonality	94
5.6.8	Obsolete two-letter commands	94
5.6.9	Low-level commands	95
5.7	Lines, paragraphs, and pages	95
5.7.1	Lines	96
5.7.2	Paragraphs	99
5.7.3	Pages	100
5.7.4	Multicolumn printing	101
5.8	Spaces	102
5.8.1	Horizontal spaces	102
5.8.2	Vertical spaces	104
5.8.3	Relative spaces	105
5.8.4	Expanding spaces	106
5.9	Boxes	107
5.9.1	Line boxes	107
5.9.2	Frame boxes	109
5.9.3	Paragraph boxes	110
5.9.4	Marginal comments	112
5.9.5	Solid boxes	113
5.9.6	Fine tuning boxes	115
6	Text environments	117
6.1	Some general rules for displayed text environments	118
6.2	List environments	118
6.2.1	Numbered lists	119
6.2.2	Bulleted lists	119
6.2.3	Captioned lists	120
6.2.4	A rule and combinations	120
6.3	Style and size environments	123
6.4	Proclamations (theorem-like structures)	124
6.4.1	The full syntax	128

6.4.2	Proclamations with style	129
6.5	Proof environments	131
6.6	Tabular environments	133
6.6.1	Table styles	140
6.7	Tabbing environments	141
6.8	Miscellaneous displayed text environments	143
7	Typing math	151
7.1	Math environments	152
7.2	Spacing rules	154
7.3	Equations	156
7.4	Basic constructs	157
7.4.1	Arithmetic operations	157
7.4.2	Binomial coefficients	159
7.4.3	Ellipses	160
7.4.4	Integrals	161
7.4.5	Roots	161
7.4.6	Text in math	162
7.4.7	Building a formula step-by-step	164
7.5	Delimiters	166
7.5.1	Stretching delimiters	167
7.5.2	Delimiters that do not stretch	168
7.5.3	Limitations of stretching	169
7.5.4	Delimiters as binary relations	170
7.6	Operators	170
7.6.1	Operator tables	171
7.6.2	Defining operators	173
7.6.3	Congruences	173
7.6.4	Large operators	174
7.6.5	Multiline subscripts and superscripts	176
7.7	Math accents	176
7.8	Stretchable horizontal lines	178
7.8.1	Horizontal braces	178
7.8.2	Overlines and underlines	179
7.8.3	Stretchable arrow math symbols	179
7.9	Formula Gallery	180
8	More math	187
8.1	Spacing of symbols	187
8.1.1	Classification	188
8.1.2	Three exceptions	188
8.1.3	Spacing commands	190
8.1.4	Examples	190

8.1.5	The <code>phantom</code> command	191
8.2	Building new symbols	192
8.2.1	Stacking symbols	192
8.2.2	Negating and side-setting symbols	194
8.2.3	Changing the type of a symbol	195
8.3	Math alphabets and symbols	195
8.3.1	Math alphabets	196
8.3.2	Math symbol alphabets	197
8.3.3	Bold math symbols	197
8.3.4	Size changes	199
8.3.5	Continued fractions	200
8.4	Vertical spacing	200
8.5	Tagging and grouping	201
8.6	Miscellaneous	204
8.6.1	Generalized fractions	204
8.6.2	Boxed formulas	205
9	Multiline math displays	207
9.1	Visual Guide	207
9.1.1	Columns	209
9.1.2	Subsidiary math environments	209
9.1.3	Adjusted columns	210
9.1.4	Aligned columns	210
9.1.5	Touring the Visual Guide	210
9.2	Gathering formulas	211
9.3	Splitting long formulas	212
9.4	Some general rules	215
9.4.1	General rules	215
9.4.2	Subformula rules	215
9.4.3	Breaking and aligning formulas	217
9.4.4	Numbering groups of formulas	218
9.5	Aligned columns	219
9.5.1	An <code>align</code> variant	221
9.5.2	<code>eqnarray</code> , the ancestor of <code>align</code>	222
9.5.3	The subformula rule revisited	223
9.5.4	The <code>alignat</code> environment	224
9.5.5	Inserting text	226
9.6	Aligned subsidiary math environments	227
9.6.1	Subsidiary variants	227
9.6.2	Split	230
9.7	Adjusted columns	231
9.7.1	Matrices	232

9.7.2	Arrays	236
9.7.3	Cases	239
9.8	Commutative diagrams	240
9.9	Adjusting the display	242
III	Document Structure	245
10	L^AT_EX documents	247
10.1	The structure of a document	248
10.2	The preamble	249
10.3	Top matter	251
10.3.1	Abstract	251
10.4	Main matter	251
10.4.1	Sectioning	252
10.4.2	Cross-referencing	255
10.4.3	Floating tables and illustrations	258
10.5	Back matter	261
10.5.1	Bibliographies in articles	261
10.5.2	Simple indexes	267
10.6	Visual design	268
11	The AMS article document class	271
11.1	Why <i>amsart</i> ?	271
11.1.1	Submitting an article to the AMS	271
11.1.2	Submitting an article to Algebra Universalis	272
11.1.3	Submitting to other journals	272
11.1.4	Submitting to conference proceedings	273
11.2	The top matter	273
11.2.1	Article information	273
11.2.2	Author information	275
11.2.3	AMS information	279
11.2.4	Multiple authors	281
11.2.5	Examples	282
11.2.6	Abstract	285
11.3	The sample article	285
11.4	Article templates	294
11.5	Options	297
11.6	The AMS packages	300

12 Legacy document classes	303
12.1 Articles and reports	303
12.1.1 Top matter	304
12.1.2 Options	306
12.2 Letters	308
12.3 The L ^A T _E X distribution	310
12.3.1 Tools	312
IV Presentations and PDF Documents	315
13 PDF documents	317
13.1 PostScript and PDF	317
13.1.1 PostScript	317
13.1.2 PDF	318
13.1.3 Hyperlinks	319
13.2 Hyperlinks for L ^A T _E X	319
13.2.1 Using <code>hyperref</code>	320
13.2.2 <code>backref</code> and <code>colorlinks</code>	320
13.2.3 Bookmarks	321
13.2.4 Additional commands	322
14 Presentations	325
14.1 Quick and dirty <code>beamer</code>	326
14.1.1 First changes	326
14.1.2 Changes in the body	327
14.1.3 Making things prettier	328
14.1.4 Adjusting the navigation	328
14.2 Baby beamers	333
14.2.1 Overlays	333
14.2.2 Understanding overlays	335
14.2.3 More on the <code>\only</code> and <code>\onslide</code> commands	337
14.2.4 Lists as overlays	339
14.2.5 Out of sequence overlays	341
14.2.6 Blocks and overlays	343
14.2.7 Links	343
14.2.8 Columns	347
14.2.9 Coloring	348
14.3 The structure of a presentation	350
14.3.1 Longer presentations	354
14.3.2 Navigation symbols	354
14.4 Notes	355
14.5 Themes	356

14.6 Planning your presentation	358
14.7 What did I leave out?	358
V Customization	361
15 Customizing L^AT_EX	363
15.1 User-defined commands	364
15.1.1 Examples and rules	364
15.1.2 Arguments	370
15.1.3 Short arguments	373
15.1.4 Optional arguments	374
15.1.5 Redefining commands	374
15.1.6 Redefining names	375
15.1.7 Showing the definitions of commands	376
15.1.8 Delimited commands	378
15.2 User-defined environments	380
15.2.1 Modifying existing environments	380
15.2.2 Arguments	383
15.2.3 Optional arguments with default values	384
15.2.4 Short contents	385
15.2.5 Brand-new environments	385
15.3 A custom command file	386
15.4 The sample article with user-defined commands	392
15.5 Numbering and measuring	398
15.5.1 Counters	399
15.5.2 Length commands	403
15.6 Custom lists	406
15.6.1 Length commands for the <code>list</code> environment	407
15.6.2 The <code>list</code> environment	409
15.6.3 Two complete examples	411
15.6.4 The <code>trivlist</code> environment	414
15.7 The dangers of customization	415
VI Long Documents	419
16 BIBL_EX	421
16.1 The database	423
16.1.1 Entry types	423
16.1.2 Typing fields	426
16.1.3 Articles	428
16.1.4 Books	429

16.1.5	Conference proceedings and collections	430
16.1.6	Theses	433
16.1.7	Technical reports	434
16.1.8	Manuscripts and other entry types	435
16.1.9	Abbreviations	436
16.2	Using BIB _T E _X	437
16.2.1	Sample files	437
16.2.2	Setup	439
16.2.3	Four steps of BIB _T E _X ing	440
16.2.4	BIB _T E _X rules and messages	443
16.2.5	Submitting an article	446
16.3	Concluding comments	446
17	<i>MakeIndex</i>	449
17.1	Preparing the document	449
17.2	Index commands	453
17.3	Processing the index entries	459
17.4	Rules	462
17.5	Multiple indexes	463
17.6	Glossary	464
17.7	Concluding comments	464
18	Books in L_AT_EX	465
18.1	Book document classes	466
18.1.1	Sectioning	466
18.1.2	Division of the body	467
18.1.3	Document class options	468
18.1.4	Title pages	469
18.1.5	Springer's document class for monographs	469
18.2	Tables of contents, lists of tables and figures	473
18.2.1	Tables of contents	473
18.2.2	Lists of tables and figures	475
18.2.3	Exercises	476
18.3	Organizing the files for a book	476
18.3.1	The folders and the master document	477
18.3.2	Inclusion and selective inclusion	478
18.3.3	Organizing your files	479
18.4	Logical design	479
18.5	Final preparations for the publisher	482
18.6	If you create the PDF file for your book	484

A Installation	489
A.1 L ^A T _E X on a PC	490
A.1.1 Installing MiK ^T eX	490
A.1.2 Installing WinEdt	490
A.1.3 The editing cycle	491
A.1.4 Making a mistake	491
A.1.5 Three productivity tools	494
A.1.6 An important folder	494
A.2 L ^A T _E X on a Mac	495
A.2.1 Installations	495
A.2.2 Working with Te _X Shop	496
A.2.3 The editing cycle	498
A.2.4 Making a mistake	498
A.2.5 Three productivity tools	498
A.2.6 An important folder	499
B Math symbol tables	501
B.1 Hebrew and Greek letters	501
B.2 Binary relations	503
B.3 Binary operations	506
B.4 Arrows	507
B.5 Miscellaneous symbols	508
B.6 Delimiters	509
B.7 Operators	510
B.7.1 Large operators	511
B.8 Math accents and fonts	512
B.9 Math spacing commands	513
C Text symbol tables	515
C.1 Some European characters	515
C.2 Text accents	516
C.3 Text font commands	516
C.3.1 Text font family commands	516
C.3.2 Text font size changes	517
C.4 Additional text symbols	518
C.5 Additional text symbols with T1 encoding	519
C.6 Text spacing commands	520
D Some background	521
D.1 A short history	521
D.1.1 T _E X	521
D.1.2 L ^A T _E X 2.09 and A _M S-T _E X	522
D.1.3 L ^A T _E X3	523

D.1.4	More recent developments	524
D.2	Structure	525
D.2.1	Using L ^A T _E X	525
D.2.2	AMS packages revisited	528
D.3	How L ^A T _E X works	528
D.3.1	The layers	528
D.3.2	Typesetting	529
D.3.3	Viewing and printing	530
D.3.4	L ^A T _E X's files	531
D.4	Interactive L ^A T _E X	534
D.5	Separating form and content	535
E	L^AT_EX and the Internet	537
E.1	Obtaining files from the Internet	537
E.2	The T _E X Users Group	541
E.3	Some useful sources of L ^A T _E X information	542
F	PostScript fonts	543
F.1	The Times font and MathTime	544
F.2	Lucida Bright fonts	546
F.3	More PostScript fonts	546
G	L^AT_EX localized	547
H	Final thoughts	551
H.1	What was left out?	551
H.1.1	L ^A T _E X omissions	551
H.1.2	T _E X omissions	552
H.2	Further reading	553
H.3	What's coming	554
Bibliography		557
Index		561

Foreword

It was the autumn of 1989—a few weeks before the Berlin wall came down, President George H. W. Bush was president, and the American Mathematical Society decided to outsource \TeX programming to Frank Mittelbach and me.

Why did the AMS outsource \TeX programming to us? This was, after all, a decade before the words “outsourcing” and “off-shore” entered the lexicon. There were many American \TeX experts. Why turn elsewhere?

For a number of years, the AMS tried to port the mathematical typesetting features of \AMS-\TeX to \LaTeX , but they made little progress with the AMSFonts. Frank and I had just published the New Font Selection Scheme for \LaTeX , which went a long way to satisfy what they wanted to accomplish. So it was logical that the AMS turned to us to add AMSFonts to \LaTeX . Being young and enthusiastic, we convinced the AMS that the \AMS-\TeX commands should be changed to conform to the \LaTeX standards. Michael Downes was assigned as our AMS contact; his insight was a tremendous help.

We already had \LaTeX-NFSS , which could be run in two modes: compatible with the old \LaTeX or enabled with the new font features. We added the reworked \AMS-\TeX code to \LaTeX-NFSS , thus giving birth to \AMS-\LaTeX , released by the AMS at the August 1990 meeting of the International Mathematical Union in Kyoto.

\AMS-\LaTeX was another variant of \LaTeX . Many installations had several \LaTeX variants to satisfy the needs of their users: with old and new font changing commands, with and without \AMS-\LaTeX , a single and a multi-language version. We decided to develop a Standard \LaTeX that would reconcile all the variants. Out of a group of interested people grew what was later called the \LaTeX3 team —and the \LaTeX3 project got underway. The team’s first major accomplishment was the release of $\text{\LaTeX2}_{\varepsilon}$ in June 1994. This standard \LaTeX incorporates all the improvements we wanted back in 1989. It is now very stable and it is uniformly used.

Under the direction of Michael Downes, our \AMS-\LaTeX code was turned into AMS packages that run under \LaTeX just like other packages. Of course, the \LaTeX3

team recognizes that these are special; we call them “required packages” because they are part and parcel of a mathematician’s standard toolbox.

Since then a lot has been achieved to make an author’s task easier. A tremendous number of additional packages are available today. The *L^AT_EX Companion*, 2nd edition, describes many of my favorite packages.

George Grätzer got involved with these developments in 1990, when he got his copy of *$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX* in Kyoto. The documentation he received explained that *$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX* is a L^AT_EX variant—read Lampert’s L^AT_EX book to get the proper background. *$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX* is not *$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -T_EX* either—read Spivak’s *$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -T_EX* book to get the proper background. The rest of the document explained in what way *$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX* differs from L^AT_EX and *$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -T_EX*. Talk about a steep learning curve . . .

Luckily, George’s frustration working through this nightmare was eased by a lengthy e-mail correspondence with Frank and lots of telephone calls to Michael. Three years of labor turned into his first book on L^AT_EX, providing a “simple introduction to *$\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ -L^AT_EX*”.

This fourth edition is more mature, but preserves what made his first book such a success. Just as in the first book, Part I is a short introduction for the beginner, dramatically reducing the steep learning curve of a few weeks to a few hours. The rest of the book is a detailed presentation of what you may need to know. George “teaches by example”. You find in this book many illustrations of even the simplest concepts. For articles, he presents the L^AT_EX source file and the typeset result side-by-side. For formulas, he discusses the building blocks with examples, presents a *Formula Gallery*, and a *Visual Guide* to multiline formulas.

Going forth and creating “masterpieces of the typesetting art”—as Donald Knuth put it at the end of the *T_EXbook*—requires a fair bit of initiation. This is the book for the L^AT_EX beginner as well as for the advanced user. You just start at a different point.

The topics covered include everything you need for mathematical publishing.

- Starting from scratch, by installing and running L^AT_EX on your own computer
- Instructions on creating articles, from the simple to the complex
- Converting an article to a presentation
- Customize L^AT_EX to your own needs
- The secrets of writing a book
- Where to turn to get more information or to download updates

The many examples are complemented by a number of easily recognizable features:

Rules which you must follow

Tips on how to achieve some specific results

Experiments to show what happens when you make mistakes—sometimes, it can be difficult to understand what went wrong when all you see is an obscure L^AT_EX error message

This book teaches you how to convert your mathematical masterpieces into typographical ones, giving you a lot of useful advice on the way. How to avoid the traps for the unwary and how to make your editor happy. And hopefully, you'll experience the fascination of doing it right. Using good typography to better express your ideas.

If you want to learn L^AT_EX, buy this book and start with the *Short Course*. If you can have only one book on L^AT_EX next to your computer, this is the one to have. And if you want to learn about the world of L^AT_EX packages, also buy a second book, the *L^AT_EX Companion*, 2nd edition.

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "Rainer Schöpf". The signature is fluid and cursive, with "Rainer" on the top line and "Schöpf" on the bottom line.

Rainer Schöpf
L^AT_EX3 team

Preface to the Fourth Edition

This is my fourth full-sized book on \LaTeX .

The first book, *Math into \TeX : A Simple Introduction to $\mathcal{AM}\mathcal{S}$ - \TeX* [19], written in 1991 and 1992, introduced the brand new $\mathcal{AM}\mathcal{S}$ - \TeX , a \TeX variant not compatible with the \TeX of the time, \TeX 2.09. It brought together the features of \TeX and the math typesetting abilities of $\mathcal{AM}\mathcal{S}$ - \TeX , the AMS typesetting language.

The second book, *Math into \TeX : An Introduction to \TeX and $\mathcal{AM}\mathcal{S}$ - \TeX* [27], written in 1995, describes the new \TeX introduced by the $\text{\TeX}3$ team and the AMS typesetting features implemented as extensions of \TeX , called packages.

The third book, *Math into \TeX* , 3rd edition [30], published in 2000, reports on the same system. By 2000, both the “new” \TeX and the AMS packages were quite mature. The feverish debugging of the new \TeX every six months bore fruit. \TeX became very stable. It has changed little since 2000. Version 2.0 of the AMS packages was released and it also became very stable. The third book reports on a rock solid typesetting system.

What also changed between 1995 and 2000 is the widespread use of the Internet. Several chapters of the third book deal with the impact of the Internet on mathematical publications.

Now, seven years later, we can still report that \TeX —no longer new—and the AMS packages have changed very little. However, the impact of the Internet became even more important. Computers also changed. They are now much more powerful. When I started typesetting math with \TeX , it took two and a half minutes to typeset a page. This book takes 1.8 seconds to typeset on my computer, a Mac desktop from 2006. As a result, we do not have to be very selective in what we load into memory; we can load everything we may possibly need.

Circumincection

So this is the first big change compared to the previous books. In this book, we roll \TeX , \LaTeX , and the AMS packages into one, and we call it simply \LaTeX . This results in a great simplification in the exposition and makes the learning curve a little less steep.

I am sure with some advanced users this will prove to be a controversial decision. They want to know where a command is defined. For the beginner and the non-expert user this does not make any difference. What matters is that the command they need be available when they need it.

From the beginner's point of view, this approach is very beneficial. Take as an example the \text command. In all three of my books, we first introduce the \LaTeX command \mbox for typing text in math formulas. After half a page of discussion comes the sentence: "It is better to enter text in formulas with the \text command provided by the amsmath package." Then another half page discusses the command \text . In this book, we ignore \mbox and go right-away to \text . You do not have to do anything to access the command, the amsmath package is always loaded for you.

And what to do if you want to find out where a command is defined. Now for both the PC and the Mac, you can easily search for contents of files. Do you want to know where a command is defined? Search for it and it is easy to find the file in which it is introduced.

Presentations

The second big change is the widespread acceptance of the Adobe PDF format. As a result, the majority of the lectures today at math meetings are given as *presentations*, PDF files projected to screens using computers. Blackboards and whiteboards have largely disappeared and computer projections are overtaking projectors. So this book takes up presentations as a major topic, introducing it in Part I and discussing it in detail in Chapter 14.

Installations

In the third book, I report a recurring question that comes up from my readers again and again:

Can you help me get started from scratch, covering everything from installing a working \LaTeX system to the rudiments of text editing?

And here is the third big change that has happened in the last few years. While earlier there were dozens of different \LaTeX implementations and hundreds of text editors, today most PC users use MiK \TeX with the text editor/front end WinEdt and most Mac users use \TeX Live with the text editor/front end TeXShop. So if you want help to

install L^AT_EX, it is easy for me to help you. Appendix A provides instructions on how to install these systems.

Acknowledgments

This book is based, of course, on the three previous books. I would like to thank the many people who read and reread those earlier manuscripts.

The editors Richard Ribstein, Thomas R. Scavo, Claire M. Connelly.

The professionals Michael Downes (the project leader for the AMS), Frank Mittelbach and David Carlisle (of the L^AT_EX3 team) read and criticized some or all of the three books.

Oren Patashnik (the author of BIBL^ETEX) carefully corrected the BIBL^ETEX chapter for two editions.

Sebastian Rahtz (the author of the hyperref package and coauthor of *The L^AT_EX Web Companion* [18]) read the chapter on the Web in the third book.

Last but not least, Barbara Beeton of the AMS read all three books with incredible insight.

The volunteers for the second book alone, there were 29—listed there. The volunteer readers made tremendous contributions and offered hundreds of pages of corrections. No expert can substitute for the diverse points of view I got from them.

My colleagues especially Michael Doob, Harry Lakser, and Craig Platt, who have been very generous with their time.

The publishers Edwin Beschler, who believed in the project from the very beginning and guided it through a decade and Ann Kostant who continued Edwin’s work.

For this book, I have had the most talented and thorough group of readers ever: Andrew Adler of the University of British Columbia, Canada, Joseph Maria Font of the University of Barcelona, Spain, and Alan Litchfield, of the Auckland University of Technology, New Zealand. Chapter 14 was read by David Derbes, Adam Goldstein, Mark Eli Kalderon, Michael Kubovy, Matthieu Masquelet, and Charilaos Skiadas—and Chapter 15 by Ross Moore. Interestingly, only half of them are mathematicians, the rest are philosophers, linguists, and so on. Appendix A.1 was read by Brian Davey and Appendix A.2 by Richard Koch (the author of TeXShop).

The fourth edition was edited by Barbara Beeton, Edwin Beschler, and Clay Martin with Ann Kostant as the Springer editor. The roles of Edwin and Ann have changed, but not the importance of their contributions. The index was compiled with painstaking precision by Laura Kirkland. Barbara Beeton also provided a number of intriguing illustrations of quaint commands. My indebtedness to her cannot be overstated.

George Grätzer

Introduction

Is this book for you?

This book is for the mathematician, physicist, engineer, scientist, linguist, or technical typist who has to learn how to typeset articles containing mathematical formulas or diacritical marks. It teaches you how to use \LaTeX , a typesetting markup language based on Donald E. Knuth's typesetting language \TeX , designed and implemented by Leslie Lamport, and greatly improved by the AMS.

Part I provides a quick introduction to \LaTeX , from typing examples of text and math to typing your first article (such as the sample article on pages 42–43) and creating your first presentation (such as the sample presentation on pages 57–58) in a very short time. The rest of the book provides a detailed exposition of \LaTeX .

\LaTeX has a huge collection of rules and commands. While the basics in Part I should serve you well in all your writings, most articles and presentations also require you to look up special topics. Learn Part I well and become passingly familiar enough with the rest of the book, so when the need arises you know where to turn with your problems.

You can find specific topics in one or more of the following sources: the Short Contents, the detailed Contents, and the Index.

What is document markup?

When you work with a word processor, you see your document on the computer monitor more or less as it looks when printed, with its various fonts, font sizes, font shapes (e.g., roman, italic) and weights (e.g., normal, boldface), interline spacing, indentation, and so on.

Working with a *markup language* is different. You type the *source file* of your article in a *text editor*; in which all characters appear in the same font. To indicate changes in the typeset text, you must add *text markup commands* to the source file.

For instance, to emphasize the phrase `detailed description` in a L^AT_EX source file, type

```
\emph{detailed description}
```

The `\emph` command is a markup command. The marked-up text yields the typeset output

```
└───  
    detailed description  
└───
```

In order to typeset math, you need *math markup commands*. As a simple example, you may need the formula $\int \sqrt{\alpha^2 + x^2} dx$ in an article you are writing. To mark up this formula in L^AT_EX, type

```
$\int \sqrt{\alpha^2 + x^2} dx$
```

You do not have to worry about determining the size of the integral symbol or how to construct the square root symbol that covers $\alpha^2 + x^2$. L^AT_EX does it all for you.

On pages 290–293, I juxtapose the source file for a sample article with the typeset version. The markup in the source file may appear somewhat challenging at first, but I think you agree that the typeset article is a pleasing rendering of the original input.

The three layers

The markup language we shall discuss comes in three layers: T_EX, L^AT_EX, and the AMS packages, described in detail in Appendix D. Most L^AT_EX installations—including the two covered in Appendix A—automatically place all three on your computer. You do not have to know what comes from which layer, so we consider the three together and call it L^AT_EX.

The three platforms

Most of you run L^AT_EX on one of the following three computer types:

- A PC, a computer running Microsoft Windows
- A Mac¹, a Macintosh computer running OS X
- A computer running a UNIX variant such as Solaris or Linux

The L^AT_EX source file and the typeset version both look the same independent of what computer you have. However, the way you type your source file, the way you typeset it, and the way you look at the typeset version depends on the computer and on the L^AT_EX implementation you use. In Appendix A, we show you how to install L^AT_EX for a PC and a Mac. Many UNIX systems come with L^AT_EX installed.

¹In the old days, I used to run TEXTURES under OS 9. Unfortunately, TEXTURES does not run on new Intel Macs.

What's in the book?

Part I is the *Short Course*; it helps you to get started quickly with L^AT_EX, to type your first articles, to prepare your first presentations, and it prepares you to tackle L^AT_EX in more depth in the subsequent parts. We assume here that L^AT_EX is installed on your computer. If it is not, jump to Appendix A.

Chapter 1 introduces the *terminology* we need to talk about your L^AT_EX implementations. **Chapter 2** introduces how L^AT_EX uses the *keyboard* and how to *type text*. You do not need to learn much to understand the basics. Text markup is quite easy. You learn math markup—which is not so straightforward—in **Chapter 3**. Several sections in this chapter ease you into *mathematical typesetting*. There is a section on the basic building blocks of math formulas. Another one discusses equations. Finally, we present the two simplest multiline formulas, which, however, cover most of your everyday needs.

In **Chapter 4**, you start writing your *first article* and prepare your *first presentation*. A L^AT_EX article is introduced with the sample article `intrart.tex`. We analyze in detail its structure and its source file, and we look at the typeset version. Based on this, we prepare an article template, and you are ready for your first article. A quick conversion of the article `intrart.tex` to a presentation introduces this important topic.

Part II introduces the two most basic skills for writing with L^AT_EX in depth, *typing text* and *typing math*.

Chapters 5 and **6** introduce *text* and *displayed text*. Chapter 5 is especially important because, when you type a L^AT_EX document, most of your time is spent typing text. The topics covered include special characters and accents, hyphenation, fonts, and spacing. Chapter 6 covers displayed text, including *lists* and *tables*, and for the mathematician, *proclamations* (theorem-like structures) and *proofs*.

Typing math is the heart of any mathematical typesetting system. **Chapter 7** discusses inline formulas in detail, including basic constructs, delimiters, operators, math accents, and horizontally stretchable lines. The chapter concludes with the *Formula Gallery*.

Math symbols are covered in three sections in **Chapter 8**. How to space them, how to build new ones. We also look at the closely related subjects of math alphabets and fonts. Then we discuss tagging and grouping equations.

L^AT_EX knows a lot about typesetting an inline formula, but not much about how to display a multiline formula. **Chapter 9** presents the numerous tools L^AT_EX offers to help you do that. We start with a *Visual Guide* to help you get oriented.

Part III discusses the parts of a L^AT_EX document. In **Chapter 10**, you learn about the *structure* of a L^AT_EX document. The most important topics are *sectioning* and *cross-referencing*. In **Chapter 11**, we discuss the *amsart document class* for articles. In particular, I present the title page information. Chapter 11 also features `sampart.tex`, a sample article for *amsart*, first in typeset form, then in mixed form, juxtaposing the source file and the typeset article. You can learn a lot about L^AT_EX just by reading the source file one paragraph at a time and seeing how that paragraph is typeset. We con-

clude this chapter with a brief description of the AMS distribution, the packages and document classes, of which `amsart` is a part.

In **Chapter 12** the most commonly used *legacy document classes* are presented, `article`, `report`, and `letter` (the book class is discussed in Chapter 18), along with a description of the standard L^AT_EX distribution. Although `article` is not as sophisticated as `amsart`, it is commonly used for articles not meant for publication.

In **Part IV**, we start with **Chapter 13**, discussing PDF files, hyperlinks, and the `hyperref` package. This prepares you for *presentations*, which are PDF files with hyperlinks. In **Chapter 14** we utilize the `beamer` package for making L^AT_EX presentations.

Part V (Chapter 15) introduces techniques to *customize L^AT_EX*: user-defined commands, user-defined environments, and command files. We present a sample command file, `newlattice.sty`, and a version of the sample article utilizing this command file. You learn how parameters that affect L^AT_EX's behavior are stored in counters and length commands, how to change them, and how to design your own custom lists. A final section discusses the pitfalls of customization.

In **Part VI (Chapters 16 and 17)**, we discuss the special needs of longer documents. Two applications, contained in the standard L^AT_EX distribution, `BIBTeX` and `MakeIndex`, make compiling *large bibliographies* and *indexes* much easier.

L^AT_EX provides the book and the `amsbook` document classes to serve as foundations for well-designed books. We discuss these in **Chapter 18**. Better quality books have to use document classes designed by professionals. We provide some sample pages from a book using Springer's `svmono.cls` document class.

Detailed instructions are given in **Appendix A** on how to install L^AT_EX on a PC and a Mac. On a PC we install `WinEdt` and `MiKTeX`. On a Mac, we install `MacTeX`, which consists of `TeX Live` and `TeXShop`. For both installations, we describe the editing cycle and three productivity tools in sufficient detail so that you be able to handle the tasks on the sample files of the *Short Course*.

You will probably find yourself referring to **Appendices B** and **C** time and again. They contain the *math and text symbol tables*.

Appendix D relates some historical background material on L^AT_EX. It gives you some insight into how L^AT_EX developed and how it works. **Appendix E** discusses the many ways we can find L^AT_EX material on the *Internet*.

Appendix F is a brief introduction to the use of *PostScript fonts* in a L^AT_EX document. **Appendix G** briefly describes the use of L^AT_EX for languages other than American English.

Finally, **Appendix H** discusses what we left out and points you towards some areas for further reading.

Mission statement

This book is a guide for typesetting mathematical documents within the constraints imposed by \LaTeX , an elaborate system with hundreds of rules. \LaTeX allows you to perform almost any mathematical typesetting task through the appropriate application of its rules. You can customize \LaTeX by introducing user-defined commands and environments and by changing \LaTeX parameters. You can also extend \LaTeX by invoking packages that accomplish special tasks.

It is *not my goal*

- to survey the hundreds of \LaTeX packages you can utilize to enhance \LaTeX
- to teach how to write \TeX code and to create your own packages
- to discuss how to design beautiful documents by writing document classes

The definitive book on the first topic is Frank Mittelbach and Michel Goosens's *The \LaTeX Companion*, 2nd edition [46] (with Johannes Braams, David Carlisle, and Chris Rowley). The second and third topics still await authoritative treatment.

Conventions

To make this book easy to read, I use some simple conventions:

- Explanatory text is set in this typeface: Times.
- Computer Modern typewriter is used to show what you should type, as well as messages from LaTeX. All the characters in this typeface have the same width, making it easy to recognize.
- I also use Computer Modern typewriter to indicate
 - Commands (`\parbox`)
 - Environments (`\align`)
 - Documents (`intrart.tex`)
 - Document classes (`amsart`)
 - Document class options (`draft`)
 - Folders or directories (`work`)
 - The names of *packages*, which are extensions of \LaTeX (`verbatim`)
- When I show you how something looks when typeset, I use Computer Modern, \TeX 's standard typeface:

I think you find this typeface sufficiently different from the other typefaces I have used. The strokes are much lighter so that you should not have much difficulty recognizing typeset L^AT_EX material. When the typeset material is a separate paragraph or paragraphs, corner brackets in the margin set it off from the rest of the text—unless it is a displayed formula.

- For explanations in the text, such as

Compare iff with iff, typed as `iff` and `if{f}`, respectively.

the same typefaces are used. Because they are not set off spatially, it may be a little more difficult to see that iff is set in Computer Modern roman (in Times, it looks like this: iff), whereas `iff` is set in the Computer Modern typewriter typeface.

- I usually introduce commands with examples, such as

`\[22pt]`

However, it is sometimes necessary to define the syntax of a command more formally. For instance,

`\[length]`

where `length`, typeset in Computer Modern typewriter italic font, represents the value you have to supply.

Good luck and have fun.



E-mail:

`gratzer@ms.umanitoba.ca`

Home page:

`http://www.maths.umanitoba.ca/homepages/gratzer.html`

PART I

Short Course

CHAPTER**1**

Your L^AT_EX

Are you sitting in front of your computer, your L^AT_EX implementation up and running? In this chapter we get you ready to tackle this *Short Course*. When you are done with Part I, you will be ready to start writing your articles in L^AT_EX.

If you do not have a L^AT_EX implementation up and running, go to Appendix A. There you find precise and detailed instructions how to set up L^AT_EX on a PC or a Mac. There is enough in the appendix for you to be able to handle the tasks in this *Short Course*. You will be pleasantly surprised at how little time it takes to set L^AT_EX up. If you use some variant of UNIX, turn to a UNIX guru who can help you set up L^AT_EX on your computer and guide you through the basics. If all else fails, read the documentation for your UNIX system.

1.1 Your computer

We assume very little, only that you are familiar with your keyboard and with the operating system on your computer. You should know standard PC and Mac menus, pull down menus, buttons, tabs, the menu items, such as *Edit>Paste*, the menu item *Paste* on the menu *Edit*. You should understand folders (we use this terminology regardless of the platform, with apologies to our UNIX readers), and you need to know how to save a file and copy a file from one folder to another.

On a PC, `work\test` refers to the subfolder `test` of the folder `work`. On a Mac, `work/test` designates this subfolder. To avoid having to write every subfolder twice, we use `work/test`, with apologies to our PC readers.

1.2 Sample files

We work with a few sample documents in this *Short Course*. You can type the sample documents as presented in the text, or you can download them from the Internet (see Section E.1). The `samples` folder also contains a copy of `SymbolTables.pdf`, a PDF version of Appendices B and C, the symbol tables.

I suggest you create a folder on your computer named `samples`, to store the downloaded sample files, and another folder called `work`, where you will keep your working files. Copy the documents from the `samples` to the `work` folder as needed. *In this book, the samples and work folders refer to the folders you have created.*

If you `Save As...` a sample file under a different name, remember the naming rule.

Rule ■ Naming of source files

The name of a L^AT_EX source file should be *one word* (no spaces, no special characters), and end with `.tex`.

So `first art.tex` is bad, but `art1.tex` and `FirstArt.tex` are good.

1.3 Editing cycle

Watch a friend type a mathematical article in L^AT_EX and you learn some basic steps.

1. A *text editor* is used to create a L^AT_EX source file. A source file might look like the top window in Figure 1.1:

```
\documentclass{amsart}
\begin{document}
The hypotenuse: $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$. I can type math!
\end{document}
```

Note that the source file is different from a typical word processor file. All characters are displayed in the same font and size.

2. Your friend “typesets” the source file (tells the application to produce a typeset version) and views the result on the monitor (the two corners indicate material typeset by L^AT_EX):

The hypotenuse: $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$. I can type math!

as in the middle window in Figure 1.1.

3. *The editing cycle continues.* Your friend goes back and forth between the source file and the typeset version, making changes and observing the results of these changes.
4. *The file is printed.* Once the typeset version is satisfactory, it is printed, creating a paper version of the typeset article. Alternatively, your friend creates a PDF file of the typeset version (see Chapter 13.1.2).

If \LaTeX finds a mistake when typesetting the source file, it opens a new window, the *log window*, illustrated as the bottom window in Figure 1.1, and displays an error message. The same message is saved into a file, called the *log file*. Look at the figures in Appendix A, depicting a variety of editing windows, windows for the typeset article, and log windows for the two \LaTeX implementations discussed there.

Various \LaTeX implementations have different names for the source file, the text editor, the typeset file, the typeset window, the log window, and the log file. Become familiar with these names for the \LaTeX implementation you use, so you can follow along with our discussions. In Appendix A, we bring you up to speed for the \LaTeX implementations discussed therein.

1.4 Three productivity tools

Most \LaTeX implementations have these important productivity tools:

Synchronization To move quickly between the source file and the typeset file, most \LaTeX implementations offer *synchronization*, the ability to jump from the typeset

```
\documentclass{amsart}
\begin{document}
The hypotenuse: $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$. I can type math!
\end{document}
```

The hypotenuse: $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$. I can type math!

```
1/bluesky/cm/cmmi10.pfb></usr/local/texlive/2007/texmf-dist/
fonts/type1/bluesky/cm/cmr10.pfb></usr/local/texlive/
2007/texmf-dist/fonts/type1/bluesky/cm/cmr7.pfb>
</usr/local/texlive/2007/texmf-
dist/fonts/type1/bluesky/cm/cmsy10.pfb>
Output written on firsttest.pdf (1 page, 13858 bytes).
Transcript written on firsttest.log.
```

Figure 1.1: Windows for the source and typeset files and the log window.

file to the corresponding place in the source file and from the source file to the corresponding place in the typeset file.

Block comment Block comments are very useful:

1. When looking for a L^AT_EX error, you may want L^AT_EX to ignore a block of text in the source file (see page 51).
2. Often you may want to make comments about your project but not have them printed or you may want to keep text on hand while you try a different option. To accomplish this, insert a comment character, %, at the start of each line where the text appears. These lines are ignored when the L^AT_EX file is processed.

Select a number of lines in a source document, then by choosing a menu option all the lines (the whole block) are commented out (a % sign is placed at the beginning of each line). This is *block comment*. The reverse is *block uncomment*.

Jump to a line This is specified by the line number in the source file. To find an error, L^AT_EX suggests that you jump to a line.

Find out how your L^AT_EX implements these features. In Appendix A, we discuss how these features are implemented for the L^AT_EX we install.

Pay careful attention how your L^AT_EX implementation works. This enables you to rapidly perform the editing cycle and utilize the productivity tools when necessary.

CHAPTER

2

Typing text

In this chapter, I introduce you to typesetting text by working through examples. More details are provided throughout the book, in particular, in Chapters 5 and 6.

A source file is made up of *text*, *math (formulas)*, and *instructions (commands) to L^AT_EX*. For instance, consider the following variant of the first sentence of this paragraph:

```
A source file is made up of text, math (e.g.,  
$\sqrt{5}$), and \emph{instructions to} LATEX.
```

This typesets as

└ A source file is made up of text, math (e.g., $\sqrt{5}$), and *instructions to L^AT_EX*.

In this sentence, the first part

```
A source file is made up of text, math (e.g.,
```

is text. Then

```
$\sqrt{5}$
```

is math

) , and

is text again. Finally,

`\emph{instructions to} \LaTeX.`

are instructions. The instruction `\emph` is a *command with an argument*, while the instruction `\LaTeX` is a *command without an argument*.

Commands, as a rule, start with a backslash (\) and tell \LaTeX to do something special. In this case, the command `\emph` emphasizes its *argument* (the text between the braces). Another kind of instruction to \LaTeX is called an *environment*. For instance, the commands

`\begin{flushright}`

and

`\end{flushright}`

enclose a `flushright` environment; the *content*, that is, the text that is typed between these two commands, is right justified (lined up against the right margin) when typeset. (The `flushleft` environment creates left justified text; the `center` environment creates text that is centered horizontally on the page.)

In practice, text, math, and instructions (commands) are mixed. For example,

`My first integral: $\int \zeta^2(x) \, dx$.`

is a mixture of all three; it typesets as

My first integral: $\int \zeta^2(x) \, dx$.

Creating a document in \LaTeX requires that we type the text and math in the source file. So we start with the keyboard, proceed to type a short note, and learn some simple rules for typing text in \LaTeX .

2.1 The keyboard

The following keys are used to type text in a source file:

a-z	A-Z	0-9
+ = * / () []		

You may also use the following punctuation marks:

, ; . ? ! : ' ' -

and the space bar, the Tab key, and the Return (or Enter) key.

Since \TeX source files are “pure text” (ASCII files), they are very portable. There is one possible problem limiting this portability, the line endings used in the source file. When you press the Return key, your text editor writes an invisible code into your source file that indicates where the line ends. Since this code may be different on different platforms (PC, Mac, and UNIX), you may have problems reading a source file created on a different platform. Luckily, many text editors include the ability to switch end-of-line codes and some, including the editors in WinEdt and TeXShop, do so automatically.

Finally, there are thirteen special keys that are mostly used in \LaTeX commands:

\$ % & ~ _ ^ \ { } @ " |

If you need to have these characters typeset in your document, there are commands to produce them. For instance, \$ is typed as $\backslash \$$, the underscore, _, is typed as $\backslash _$, and % is typed as $\backslash \%$. Only @ requires no special command, type @ to print @. There are also commands to produce composite characters, such as accented characters, for example ä, which is typed as $\backslash " \{ a \}$. See Section 5.4.4 for a complete discussion of symbols not available directly from the keyboard and Appendix C for the text symbol tables. Appendices B and C are reproduced in the samples folder as a PDF file, SymbolTables.pdf.

\LaTeX prohibits the use of other keys on your keyboard—unless you are using a version of \LaTeX that is set up to work with non-English languages (see Appendix G). When trying to typeset a source file that contains a prohibited character, \LaTeX displays an error message similar to the following:

```
! Text line contains an invalid character.
1.222 completely irreducible^?
^?
```

In this message, 1.222 means line 222 of your source file. You must edit that line to remove the character that \LaTeX cannot understand. The log file (see Section D.3.4) also contains this message. For more about \LaTeX error messages, see Sections 3.2 and 4.3.1.

2.2 Your first note

We start our discussion on how to type a note in \LaTeX with a simple example. Suppose you want to use \LaTeX to produce the following:

It is of some concern to me that the terminology used in multi-section math courses is not uniform.

In several sections of the course on matrix theory, the term “hamiltonian-reduced” is used. I, personally, would rather call these “hyper-simple”. I invite others to comment on this problem.

Of special concern to me is the terminology in the course by Prof. Rudi Hochschwabauer. Since his field is new, there is no accepted terminology. It is imperative that we arrive at a satisfactory solution.

To produce this typeset document, create a new file in your work folder with the name `note1.tex`. Type the following, including the spacing and linebreaks shown, but not the line numbers:

```

1  % Sample file: note1.tex
2  \documentclass{sample}
3
4  \begin{document}
5  It is of some concern to me    that
6  the terminology used in  multi-section
7  math courses is not uniform.
8
9  In several sections of the course on
10 matrix theory, the term
11   ‘‘hamiltonian-reduced’’ is used.
12   I, personally, would rather call these
13   ‘‘hyper-simple’’. I invite others
14   to comment on this  problem.
15
16  Of special concern to me is the terminology
17  in the course by Prof.~Rudi Hochschwabauer.
18  Since his field is new, there is no accepted
19  terminology.  It is imperative
20  that we arrive at a satisfactory solution.
21  \end{document}
```

Alternatively, copy the `note1.tex` file from the `samples` folder (see page 4). Make sure that `sample.cls` is in your work folder.

The first line of `note1.tex` starts with `%`. Such lines are called *comments* and are ignored by L^AT_EX. Commenting is very useful. For example, if you want to add some notes to your source file and you do not want those notes to appear in the typeset version of your article, you can begin those lines with a `%`. You can also comment out part of a line:

simply put, we believe % actually, it's not so simple

Everything on the line after the % character is ignored by L^AT_EX.

Line 2 specifies the *document class* (in our case, `sample`)¹ that controls how the document is formatted.

The text of the note is typed within the *document environment*, that is, between the lines

`\begin{document}`

and

`\end{document}`

Now typeset `note1.tex`. If you use WinEdt, click on the Texify icon. If you use TeXShop, click the Typeset button. You should get the typeset document as shown on page 10. As you can see from this example, L^AT_EX is different from a word processor. It disregards the way you input and position the text, and follows only the formatting instructions given by the markup commands. L^AT_EX notices when you put a blank space in the text, but it ignores *how many blank spaces* have been inserted. L^AT_EX does not distinguish between a blank space (hitting the space bar), a tab (hitting the Tab key), and a *single* carriage return (hitting Return once). However, hitting Return twice gives a blank line; *one or more* blank lines mark the end of a paragraph.

L^AT_EX, by default, fully justifies text by placing a flexible amount of space between words—the *interword space*—and a somewhat larger space between sentences—the *intersentence space*. If you have to force an interword space, you can use the `_` command (in L^AT_EX books, we use the symbol `_` to mean a blank space). See Section 5.2.2 for a full discussion.

The `\~` (tilde) command also forces an interword space, but with a difference; it keeps the words on the same line. This command is called a *tie* or *nonbreakable space* (see Section 5.4.3).

Note that on lines 11 and 13, the left double quotes are typed as ‘‘ (two left single quotes) and the right double quotes are typed as ’’ (two right single quotes or apostrophes). The left single quote key is not always easy to find. On an American keyboard,² it is usually hidden in the upper-left or upper-right corner of the keyboard, and shares a key with the tilde (`\~`).

¹I know you have never heard of the `sample` document class. It is a special class created for these exercises. You can find it in the `samples` folder (see page 4). If you have not yet copied it over to the `work` folder, do so now.

²The location of special keys on the keyboard depends on the country where the computer was sold. It also depends on whether the computer is a PC or a Mac. In addition, notebooks tend to have fewer keys than desktop computers. Fun assignment: Find the tilde (`\~`) on a Spanish and on a Hungarian keyboard.

2.3 Lines too wide

\LaTeX reads the text in the source file one line at a time and when the end of a paragraph is reached, \LaTeX typesets the entire paragraph. Occasionally, \LaTeX gets into trouble when trying to split the paragraph into typeset lines. To illustrate this situation, modify `note1.tex`. In the second sentence, replace `term` by `strange term` and in the fourth sentence, delete `Rudi`, including the blank space following `Rudi`. Now save this modified file in your work folder using the name `note1b.tex`. You can also find `note1b.tex` in the `samples` folder (see page 4).

Typesetting `note1b.tex`, you obtain the following:

It is of some concern to me that the terminology used in multi-section math courses is not uniform.

In several sections of the course on matrix theory, the strange term “hamiltonian-reduced” is used. I, personally, would rather call these “hyper-simple”. I invite others to comment on this problem.

Of special concern to me is the terminology in the course by Prof. Hochschwabauer. Since his field is new, there is no accepted terminology. It is imperative that we arrive at a satisfactory solution.

The first line of paragraph two is about 1/4 inch too wide. The first line of paragraph three is even wider. In the `log` window, \LaTeX displays the following messages:

```
Overfull \hbox (15.38948pt
too wide) in paragraph at lines 9--15 []\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 In sev-eral
sec-tions of the course on ma-trix the-ory, the strange term
‘‘hamiltonian-
```

```
Overfull \hbox (23.27834pt too wide) in paragraph
at lines 16--21
[]\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 Of spe-cial con-cern to me is the
ter-mi-nol-ogy in the course by Prof. Hochschwabauer.
```

You will find the same messages in the `log` file (see Sections 1.3 and D.2.1).

The first message,

```
Overfull \hbox (15.38948pt too wide) in paragraph
at lines 9--15
```

refers to the second paragraph (lines 9–15 in the source file—its location in the typeset document is not specified). The typeset version of this paragraph has a line that is 15.38948 points too wide. \LaTeX uses *points* (pt) to measure distances; there are about 72 points in 1 inch (or about 28 points in 1 cm).

The next two lines,

```
[] \OT1/cmr/m/n/10 In sev-eral sec-tions of the course
on ma-trix
the-ory, the strange term ‘‘hamiltonian-
identify the source of the problem: LATEX did not properly hyphenate the word
hamiltonian-reduced
because it (automatically) hyphenates a hyphenated word only at the hyphen.
```

The second reference,

```
Overfull \hbox (23.27834pt too wide) in paragraph
at lines 16--21
```

is to the third paragraph (lines 16–21 of the source file). There is a problem with the word Hochschwabauer; L^AT_EX’s standard hyphenation routine cannot handle it (a German hyphenation routine would have no difficulty hyphenating this name—see Appendix G). If you encounter such a problem, you can either try to reword the sentence or insert one or more *optional (or discretionary) hyphen commands* (\-), which tell L^AT_EX where it may hyphenate the word. In this case, you can rewrite Hochschwabauer as Hoch\–schwa\–bauer and the second hyphenation problem disappears. You can also utilize the \hyphenation command (see Section 5.4.9).

Sometimes a small horizontal overflow can be difficult to spot. The draft document class option may help (see Sections 11.5, 12.1.2, and 18.1 for more about document class options). L^AT_EX places a black box (or *slug*) in the margin to mark an overfull line. You can invoke this option by changing the \documentclass line to

```
\documentclass[draft]{sample}
```

A version of note1b.tex with this option can be found in the samples folder under the name noteslug.tex. Typeset it to see the “slugs”.

2.4 More text features

Next, we produce the following note:



September 12, 2006

From the desk of George Grätzer

October 7–21 *please* use my temporary e-mail address:

George_Gratzer@yahoo.com



Type in the source file, without the line numbers. Save it as `note2.tex` in your work folder (`note2.tex` can be found in the `samples` folder—see page 4):

```

1  % Sample file: note2.tex
2  \documentclass{sample}
3
4  \begin{document}
5  \begin{flushright}
6      \today
7  \end{flushright}
8  \textbf{From the desk of George Gr\"{a}tzer}\[22pt]
9  October~7--21 \emph{please} use my
10 temporary e-mail address:
11 \begin{center}
12     \texttt{George\_Gratzer@yahoo.com}
13 \end{center}
14 \end{document}
```

This note introduces several additional text features of L^AT_EX:

- The `\today` command (in line 6) to display the date on which the document is typeset (so you will see a date different from the date shown above in your own typeset document).
- The environments to *right justify* (lines 5–7) and *center* (lines 11–13) text.
- The commands to change the text style, including the `\emph` command (line 8) to *emphasize* text, the `\textbf` command (line 9) for **bold** text, and the `\texttt` command (line 12) to produce *typewriter style* text.

These are *commands with arguments*. In each case, the argument of the command follows the name of the command and is typed between braces, that is, between `{` and `}`.

- The form of the L^AT_EX commands: Almost all L^AT_EX *commands* start with a backslash (`\`) followed by the *command name*. For instance, `\textbf` is a command and `textbf` is the command name. The command name is terminated by the first *non-alphabetic character*, that is, by any character other than a–z or A–Z. So `\textbf{1}` is not a command name, in fact, `\textbf{1}` typesets as 1. (Let us look at this a bit more closely. `\textbf` is a valid command. If a command needs an argument and is not followed by braces, then it takes the next character as its argument. So `\textbf{1}` is the command `\textbf` with the argument 1, which typesets as bold 1: **1**.) Note that command names are *case sensitive*. Typing `\Textbf` or `\TEXTBF` generates an error message.
- The multiple role of hyphens: Double hyphens are used for number ranges. For example, `7--21` (in line 9) typesets as 7–21. The punctuation mark – is called an *en*

dash. Use triple hyphens for the *em dash* punctuation mark—such as the one in this sentence.

- The *new line* command, `\\\` (or `\newline`): To create additional space between lines (as in the last note, under the line **From the desk...**), you can use the `\\\` command and specify an appropriate amount of vertical space: `\\\[22pt]`. Note that this command uses *square brackets* rather than braces because the argument is *optional*. The distance may be given in points (pt), centimeters (cm), or inches (in). (There is an analogous *new page* command, `\newpage`, not used in this short note.)
- Special rules for special characters (see Section 2.1), for *accented characters* and for some *European characters*. For instance, the accented character ä is typed as `\"{"a}`. Accents are explained in Section 5.4.7 (see also the tables in Section C.2).

When you need to know more about typing text than we have discussed here, see Chapters 5 and 6. See also Appendix C, where all text symbols are organized into tables. Recall that we also have the `SymbolTables.pdf` in the `samples` folder.

Typing math

While marking up text in L^AT_EX is easy, marking up math is less intuitive because math formulas are two-dimensional constructs and we have to mark them up with a one-dimensional string of characters. However, even the most complicated two-dimensional formula is made up of fairly simple building blocks. So by concentrating on the building blocks—selectively, just learn the ones you need—you can get started with math quickly.

3.1 A note with math

In addition to the regular text keys and the 13 special keys discussed in Section 2.1, two more keys are used to type math:

< >

The formula $2 < |x| > y$ (typed as `$2 < |x| >y$`) uses both. Note that such math formulas, called *inline*, are enclosed by \$ symbols. We discuss shortly another kind of math formula called *displayed*.

We begin typesetting math with the following note:

□

In first-year calculus, we define intervals such as (u, v) and (u, ∞) . Such an interval is a *neighborhood* of a if a is in the interval. Students should realize that ∞ is only a symbol, not a number. This is important since we soon introduce concepts such as $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x)$.

When we introduce the derivative

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a},$$

we assume that the function is defined and continuous in a neighborhood of a .

└

To create the source file for this mixed text and math note, create a new document with your text editor. Name it `math.tex`, place it in the `work` folder, and type in the following source file—without the line numbers—or simply copy `math.tex` from the `samples` folder (see page 4):

```

1  % Sample file: math.tex
2  \documentclass{sample}
3
4  \begin{document}
5  In first-year calculus, we define intervals such
6  as  $(u, v)$  and  $(u, \infty)$ . Such an interval
7  is a neighborhood of  $a$ 
8  if  $a$  is in the interval. Students should
9  realize that  $\infty$  is only a
10 symbol, not a number. This is important since
11 we soon introduce concepts
12 such as  $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x)$ .
13
14 When we introduce the derivative
15 \[
16   \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a},
17 \]
18 we assume that the function is defined and
19 continuous in a neighborhood of  $a$ .
20 \end{document}
```

This note introduces several basic concepts of math in L^AT_EX:

- There are two kinds of math formulas and environments in `math.tex`:
 - *Inline* math environments open and close with \$ (as seen throughout this book) or open with \() and close with \).
 - *Displayed* math environments open with \[and close with \].

- Within math environments, L^AT_EX uses its own spacing rules and completely ignores the white space you type, with two exceptions:
 - Spaces that terminate commands. So in `\infty a` the space is not ignored, `\infty a` produces an error.
 - Spaces in the arguments of commands that temporarily revert to regular text. `\text` is such a command (see Sections 3.3 and 7.4.6).

The white space that you add when typing math is important only for the readability of the source file. We summarize with a simple rule.

Rule ■ Spacing in text and math

Many spaces equal one space in text, whereas your spacing is ignored in math, unless the space terminates a command.

- A math symbol is invoked by a command. For example, the command for ∞ is `\infty` and the command for \rightarrow is `\to`. The math symbols are organized into tables in Appendix B (see also `SymbolTables.pdf` in the `samples` folder).
- Some commands, such as `\sqrt`, need *arguments* enclosed by { and }. To typeset $\sqrt{5}$, type `\sqrt{5}`, where `\sqrt` is the command and 5 is the argument. Some commands need more than one argument. To get

$$\frac{3+x}{5}$$

type

```
\[
  \frac{3+x}{5}
\]
```

where `\frac` is the command, `3+x` and `5` are the arguments—we indent for readability.

3.2 Errors in math

Even in such a simple note there are opportunities for errors. To help familiarize yourself with some of the most commonly seen L^AT_EX math errors and their causes, we deliberately introduce mistakes into `math.tex`. The version of `math.tex` with mistakes is `mathb.tex`. By inserting and deleting % signs, you make the mistakes visible to L^AT_EX one at a time—recall that lines starting with % are comments and are therefore ignored by L^AT_EX.

Type the following source file, and save it under the name `mathb.tex` in the work folder or copy the file `mathb.tex` from the `samples` folder (see page 4). Do not type the line numbers—they are shown here to help you with the experiments.

```

1  % Sample file: mathb.tex
2  \documentclass{sample}
3
4  \begin{document}
5  In first-year calculus, we define intervals such
6  % as $(u, v)$ and $(u, \infty)$. Such an interval
7  as $(u, v)$ and $(u, \infty)$. Such an interval
8  is a \emph{neighborhood} of $a$%
9  if $a$ is in the interval. Students should
10 realize that $\infty$ is only a
11 symbol, not a number. This is important since
12 we soon introduce concepts
13 such as $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x)$.
14 %such as $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x)$.
15
16 When we introduce the derivative
17 \[
18   \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}
19 % \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}
20 \]
21 we assume that the function is defined and
22 continuous in a neighborhood of $a$.
23 \end{document}
```

Experiment 1 In line 7, the \$ before the (u is missing. Typeset the `mathb.tex` source file. L^AT_EX generates the following error message:

```

! Missing $ inserted.
<inserted text>
                $
1.7 as $(u, v)$ and (u, \infty
                                )$. Such an interval
```

Since the \$ was omitted, L^AT_EX reads (u, \infty) as text; but the \infty command instructs L^AT_EX to typeset a math symbol, which can only be done in a math formula. So L^AT_EX offers to put a \$ in front of \infty while typesetting the source file—it does not put the \$ in the source file itself. L^AT_EX attempts a cure, but in this example it comes too late, because the math formula *should* start just before (u.

Whenever you see the ? prompt, you may press Return to ignore the error and continue typesetting the document. Section D.4 lists a number of other options and prompts.

Experiment 2 Uncomment line 6 by deleting the % at the beginning of line 6 and comment out line 7 by inserting a % at the beginning of line 7. This eliminates the previous error. Uncomment line 14 and comment out line 13. This introduces a new error, the closing brace of the subscript is missing. Now typeset the note. You get the error message

```
! Missing } inserted.
<inserted text>
    }
1.14 such as $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x)$
```

\LaTeX reports that a closing brace (}) is missing, but it is not sure where the brace should be. \LaTeX noticed that a subscript (see page 23) started with {, but \LaTeX reached the end of the math formula before finding a closing brace }. To remedy this, you must look in the formula for an opening brace { that is not balanced, and insert the missing closing brace }. Make the necessary change and typeset again to view the difference.

Experiment 3 Uncomment line 13 and comment out line 14, removing the previous error. Delete the % at the beginning of line 19 and insert a % at the beginning of line 18, introducing our final error, omitting the closing brace of the first argument and the opening brace of the second argument of \frac . Save and typeset the file. You get the error message

```
! Too many }'s.
\frac #1#2->{\begingroup #1\endgroup \@@over #2}
1.20 \]
```

\LaTeX got confused. The second line of the message explains that \frac has two arguments and it is not working out, but the error is incorrectly identified.

If the typo on line 19 is $\text{\frac}{f(x)-f(a)}{x-a}g$, then \LaTeX produces

$$\frac{f(x) - f(a)x - a}{g}$$

and no error message is generated.

Experiment 4 Make sure all the errors are commented out. Typeset `mathb.tex`, testing that there are no errors. Now delete the two \$ signs in line 22, that is, replace `a` by `a`. Typeset the file. It typesets with no errors. Here is the last line of the typeset file you get:

└

we assume that the function is defined and continuous in a neighborhood of a .

└

instead of

└

we assume that the function is defined and continuous in a neighborhood of a .

└

This is probably the error most often made by beginners. There is no error message by L^AT_EX and the typeset version looks good. You need sharp eyes to catch such an error.

See Section 4.3.1 for more information about finding and fixing problems in your L^AT_EX source files.

3.3 *Building blocks of a formula*

A formula is built from a large collection of components. We group them as follows:

- Arithmetic
 - Subscripts and superscripts
- Binomial coefficients
- Congruences
- Delimiters
- Ellipses
- Integrals
- Math accents
- Matrices
- Operators
 - Large operators
- Roots
- Text

In this section, I describe each of these groups, and provide examples illustrating their use.

Arithmetic The arithmetic operations $a + b$, $a - b$, $-a$, a/b , and ab are typed in the natural way (the spaces are typed only for readability, others may type fewer spaces):

```
$a + b$, $a - b$, $-a$, $a / b$, $a \cdot b$
```

If you wish to use \cdot or \times for multiplication, as in $a \cdot b$ or $a \times b$, use `\cdot` or `\times`, respectively. The expressions $a \cdot b$ and $a \times b$ are typed as follows:

```
$a \cdot b$ $a \times b$
```

Displayed fractions, such as

$$\frac{1+2x}{x+y+xy}$$

are typed with `\frac`:

```
\[
  \frac{1+2x}{x+y+xy}
\]
```

The `\frac` command is seldom used inline because it can disrupt the interline spacing of the paragraph.

Subscripts and superscripts Subscripts are typed with `_` (underscore) and superscripts with `^` (caret). Subscripts and superscripts should be enclosed in braces, that is, typed between `{` and `}`. To get a_1 , type `a_{1}`. Omitting the braces in this example causes no harm, but to get a_{10} , you *must* type `a_{10}`. Indeed, `a_{10}` is typeset as a_{10} . Further examples, a_i , a^2 , a^{i_1} , a_n^2 , are typed as

```
$a_{i_1}$, $a^2$, $a^{i_1}$, $a_n^2$
```

There is one symbol, the prime (`'`), that is automatically superscripted in math. To get $f'(x)$, just type `$f'(x)$`.

Binomial coefficients Binomial coefficients are typeset with the `\binom` command.

For example, $\binom{a}{b+c}$ is typed inline as

```
$\binom{a}{b+c}$
```

whereas a displayed version,

$$\binom{\frac{n^2-1}{2}}{n+1}$$

is typed as

```
\[
  \binom{\frac{n^2-1}{2}}{n+1}
\]
```

Congruences The two most important forms are

$$\begin{aligned} a \equiv v \pmod{\theta} &\quad \text{typed as } \$a \equiv v \pmod{\theta} \\ a \equiv v (\theta) &\quad \text{typed as } \$a \equiv v \pod{\theta} \end{aligned}$$

Delimiters Parentheses and square brackets are examples of delimiters. They are used to delimit some subformulas, as in $[(a*b)+(c*d)]^2$, which typesets as $[(a * b) + (c * d)]^2$. L^AT_EX can be instructed to expand them vertically to enclose a formula such as

$$\left(\frac{1+x}{2+y^2} \right)^2$$

which is typed as

```
\[
  \left( \frac{1+x}{2+y^2} \right)^2
\]
```

The `\left(` and `\right)` commands tell L^AT_EX to size the parentheses correctly, relative to the size of the symbols inside the parentheses. Two further examples,

$$\left| \frac{a+b}{2} \right|, \quad \|A^2\|$$

would be typed as

```
\[
  \left| \frac{a+b}{2} \right|,
  \quad \left\| A^2 \right\|
\]
```

where `\quad` is a spacing command (see Sections 8.1 and B.9).

Additional delimiters are listed in Sections 7.5 and B.6.

Ellipses The *ellipsis* (...) in text is provided by the `\dots` command:

`A...Z` is typed as `A \dots Z`

In formulas, the ellipsis is printed either as *low* (or *on-the-line*) *dots*:

`F(x_1, ..., x_n)` is typed as `$F(x_{1}, \dots, x_{n})$`

or as centered dots:

`x1 + ... + xn` is typed as `$x_{1} + \dots + x_{n}$`

The command `\dots` typesets the correct ellipsis with the correct spacing in most cases. If it does not, see Section 7.4.3 on how to specify the appropriate ellipsis from the four types available.

Integrals The command for an integral is `\int`. The lower limit is specified as a subscript and the upper limit is specified as a superscript. For example, the formula $\int_0^\pi \sin x \, dx = 2$ is typed as

```
$\int_{0}^{\pi} \sin x \, dx = 2$
```

where `\,` is a spacing command (see Sections 8.1 and B.9).

Math accents The four most frequently used math accents are:

\bar{a}	typed as	<code>\$\bar{a}\$</code>
\hat{a}	typed as	<code>\$\hat{a}\$</code>
\tilde{a}	typed as	<code>\$\tilde{a}\$</code>
\vec{a}	typed as	<code>\$\vec{a}\$</code>

See Sections 7.7 and B.8 for complete lists.

Matrices You type the matrix

$$\begin{matrix} a + b + c & uv & x - y & 27 \\ a + b & u + v & z & 134 \end{matrix}$$

with the `\matrix` command

```
\[
\begin{matrix}
a + b + c & uv & x - y & 27 \\
a + b & u + v & z & 134
\end{matrix}
]
```

The `matrix` environment separates adjacent matrix elements within a row with ampersands (`&`). Rows are *separated* by new line commands (`\backslash\backslash`). Do not end the last row with a new line command!

The `matrix` environment has to appear within a math environment, as in the example. As a rule, it is in a displayed math environment, since inline it appears too large. It can be used in the `align` environment discussed in Section 3.4.2.

The `matrix` environment does not provide delimiters. Several variants do, including `pmatrix` and `vmatrix`. For example,

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a + b + c & uv \\ a + b & u + v \end{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 30 & 7 \\ 3 & 17 \end{vmatrix}$$

is typed as follows:

```
\[
  \mathbf{A} =
\begin{pmatrix}
  a + b + c & u v \\
  a + b & u + v
\end{pmatrix}
\begin{vmatrix}
  30 & 7 \\
  3 & 17
\end{vmatrix}
\]
```

As you can see, `pmatrix` typesets as a `matrix` between a pair of `\left(` and `\right)` commands, while `vmatrix` typesets as a `matrix` between a pair of `\left|` and `\right|` commands. See Section 9.7.1 for a listing of all the matrix variants.

Operators To typeset the sine function, $\sin x$, type `$\sin x$`.

Note that `$sin x$` would be typeset as *sinx* because L^AT_EX interprets this expression as the product of four variables.

L^AT_EX calls `\sin` an *operator*. Sections 7.6.1 and B.7 list a number of operators. See Section 7.6.2 for user-defined operators. Some are just like `\sin`. Others produce a more complex display, for example,

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = 0$$

is typed as

```
\[
  \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = 0
\]
```

Large operators The command for *sum* is `\sum` and for *product* is `\prod`. The following examples,

$$\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \quad \prod_{i=1}^n x_i^2$$

are typed as

```
\[
  \sum_{i=1}^n x_{\{i\}}^2 \quad \prod_{i=1}^n x_{\{i\}}^2
\]
```

where `\qquad` is a spacing command (see Sections 8.1 and B.9) used to separate the two formulas, yielding twice the space produced by `\quad`.

Sums and products are examples of *large operators*. They are typeset bigger when displayed than inline. They are listed in Sections 7.6.4 and B.7.1.

Roots `\sqrt` produces a square root. For instance, $\sqrt{a + 2b}$ is typed as

```
$\sqrt{a + 2b}$
```

The n -th root, $\sqrt[n]{5}$, requires the use of an *optional argument*, which is specified using brackets (see Section 5.3.1): `$\sqrt[n]{5}$`.

Text You can include text in a formula with a `\text` command. For instance,

```
a = b,      by assumption
```

is typed as

```
\[
  a = b, \text{\qquad by assumption}
\]
```

Note the spacing command `\qquad` in the argument of `\text`. You could also type

```
\[
  a = b, \qquad \text{by assumption}
\]
```

because `\qquad` works in math as well as in text (see Sections 8.1 and B.9).

3.4 Displayed formulas

3.4.1 Equations

The `equation` environment creates a displayed math formula and automatically generates an equation number. The equation

$$(1) \quad \int_0^\pi \sin x \, dx = 2$$

is typed as

```
\begin{equation}\label{E:firstInt}
  \int_0^\pi \sin x \, dx = 2
\end{equation}
```

The equation number, which is automatically generated, depends on how many other numbered equations occur before the given equation.

To reference this formula without having to remember a number—which may change when you edit your document—give the equation a symbolic label by using the `\label` command and refer to the equation in your document by using the symbolic label, the argument of the `\label` command. In this example, I have called the first equation `firstInt` (first integral), and used the convention that the label of an equation starts with `E:`, so that the complete `\label` command is

```
\label{E:firstInt}
```

The number of this formula is referenced with the `\ref` command. Its page is referenced using the `\pageref` command. For example, to get

└
 see (1) on page 27
└
 type

```
see^(\ref{E:firstInt}) on page^{\pageref{E:firstInt}}
```

The `\eqref` command provides the reference number in parentheses. So the last example could be typed

```
see^{\eqref{E:firstInt}} on page^{\pageref{E:firstInt}}
```

The `\eqref` command is smart. Even if the equation number is referenced in emphasized or italicized text, the reference typesets upright (in roman type).

Note the use of the nonbreakable space (`^`) to ensure that when typeset the equation number is on the same line as the word `see`. (See the footnote on page 11.) You should always use a nonbreakable space to link a `\ref` command to the name of its part, for instance, equation, page, section, chapter. Use two nonbreakable spaces in

```
Sections^{\ref{S:main}} and^{\ref{S:subsidiary}}.
```

The main advantage of this cross-referencing system is that when you add, delete, or rearrange equations, L^AT_EX automatically renames the equations and adjusts the references that appear in your typeset document. You can split a long article into two or move a section to the end, and L^AT_EX takes care of the renaming. This significantly reduces the amount of time you need to spend working on your document. It also reduces the potential for errors in the finished project.

Rule ■ Typeset twice

For renumbering to work, you have to typeset the source file twice.

The first run creates a list of references that need to be linked. The second creates the cross references and inserts the relevant text throughout the document (see Sections 18.2 and D.3.4). \LaTeX issues a warning if you forget. Such warnings do not interrupt the typesetting, you only see them in the log window—if the window is visible—and in the log file. It is a good idea to check for warnings periodically.

An equation is numbered whether or not there is a `\label` command attached to it. Of course, if there is no `\label` command, the number generated for the equation by \LaTeX cannot be referenced with the command `\ref` or `\eqref`.

The system described here is called *symbolic referencing*. The symbol for the number is the argument of the `\label` command, and that symbol can be referenced with `\ref`, `\eqref`, or `\pageref` commands. \LaTeX uses the same mechanism for all of the generated numbering systems: sections, subsections, subsubsections, equations, theorems, lemmas, and bibliographic references—except that for bibliographic references, \LaTeX uses the `\bibitem` command to define a bibliographic item and the `\cite` command to cite a bibliographic item (see Section 4.2.4 and Chapter 16).

What happens if you misspell a reference, e.g., typing `\ref{E:firstint}` instead of `\ref{E:firstInt}`? \LaTeX typesets `??`. There are two warnings in the log file:

```
LaTeX Warning: Reference 'E:firstint' on page 39
              undefined on input line 475.
```

for the typeset page and the other one close to the end:

```
LaTeX Warning: There were undefined references.
```

If a `\cite` is misspelled, you get `[?]` and similar warnings.

Equations can also be *tagged* by attaching a name to the formula with the `\tag` command. The tag replaces the equation number.

For example,

$$(Int) \quad \int_0^{\pi} \sin x \, dx = 2$$

is typed as

```
\begin{equation}
\int_{0}^{\pi} \sin x \, dx = 2 \tag{Int}
\end{equation}
```

Tags (of the type discussed here) are *absolute*. This equation is *always* referred to as (Int). Equation numbers, on the other hand, are *relative*, they may change when equations are added, deleted, or rearranged.

3.4.2 Aligned formulas

\LaTeX has many ways to typeset multiline formulas. We discuss three constructs in this section: *simple alignment*, *annotated alignment*, and *cases*. See Chapter 9 for many others.

For simple and annotated alignment we use the `align` environment. Each line in the `align` environment is a separate equation, which \LaTeX automatically numbers.

Simple alignment

Simple alignment is used to align two or more formulas. To obtain the formulas

$$(2) \quad r^2 = s^2 + t^2,$$

$$(3) \quad 2u + 1 = v + w^\alpha,$$

$$(4) \quad x = \frac{y + z}{\sqrt{s + 2u}};$$

type the following, using `\backslash\backslash` as the *line separator* and `&` as the *alignment point*:

```
\begin{align}
r^{2} &= s^{2} + t^{2}, & \label{E:Pyth} \\
2u + 1 &= v + w^{\alpha}, & \label{E:alpha} \\
x &= \frac{y + z}{\sqrt{s + 2u}}; & \label{E:frac}
\end{align}
```

Note that you should not have a `\backslash\backslash` to terminate the last line.

Figure 3.1 displays the source and the typeset versions of formulas (2)–(4), emphasizing the alignment points of the source and the typeset formula. Of course, in the source, the alignment points do not have to line up.

These formulas are numbered (2), (3), and (4) because they are preceded by one numbered equation earlier in this section.

The `align` environment can also be used to break a long formula into two or more parts. Since numbering both lines in such a case would be undesirable, you can prevent the numbering of the second line by using the `\notag` command in the second part of the formula.

For example,

$$(5) \quad h(x) = \int \left(\frac{f(x) + g(x)}{1 + f^2(x)} + \frac{1 + f(x)g(x)}{\sqrt{1 - \sin x}} \right) dx \\ = \int \frac{1 + f(x)}{1 + g(x)} dx - 2 \tan^{-1}(x - 2)$$

is typed as follows:

```
\begin{aligned}
h(x) &\notag = \int \left( \frac{f(x) + g(x)}{1 + f^2(x)} + \frac{1 + f(x)g(x)}{\sqrt{1 - \sin x}} \right) dx \\
&
\end{aligned}
```

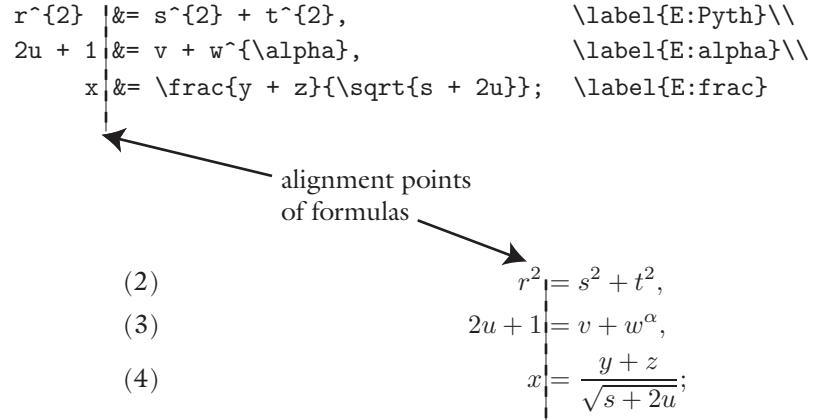


Figure 3.1: Simple alignment: source and typeset.

```

+ \frac{1+ f(x)g(x)}{\sqrt{1 - \sin x}}
\right) \, , \, dx \label{E:longInt} \\
&= \int \frac{1 + f(x)}{1 + g(x)} \, , \, dx
- 2 \tan^{-1}(x-2) \notag
\end{aligned}

```

The rules for simple alignment are easy to remember.

Rule ■ Simple alignments

- Use the `align` environment.
- Separate the lines with `\\"`.
- In each line, indicate the alignment point with `&`, one `&` per line. If the alignment point is adjacent to an `=`, `+`, and so on, place it *before* to ensure proper spacing.
- Place a `\notag` command in each line that you do not wish numbered.
- If no line should be numbered, use the `align*` environment.
- Place a `\label` command in each numbered line you may want to reference with `\ref`, `\eqref`, or `\pageref`.

aligned formulas	annotation
$ \begin{aligned} x &= x \wedge (y \vee z) \\ &\& (x \wedge y) \vee (x \wedge z) \\ &\& y \vee z. \end{aligned} $ <p style="text-align: center;">alignment points of formulas</p>	$ \begin{aligned} &\&\text{(by distributivity)}\\ &\&\text{(by condition (M))} \end{aligned} $ <p style="text-align: center;">alignment points of annotations</p>
$ \begin{aligned} x &= x \wedge (y \vee z) \\ &= (x \wedge y) \vee (x \wedge z) \\ &= y \vee z. \end{aligned} $ <p style="text-align: center;">alignment points of formulas</p>	$ \begin{aligned} &\text{(by distributivity)} \\ &\text{(by condition (M))} \end{aligned} $ <p style="text-align: center;">alignment points of annotations</p>

Figure 3.2: Annotated alignment: source and typeset.

Annotated alignment

Annotated alignment allows you to align formulas and their annotations, that is, explanatory text, separately (see Figure 3.2):

$$\begin{aligned}
 (6) \quad x &= x \wedge (y \vee z) && \text{(by distributivity)} \\
 &= (x \wedge y) \vee (x \wedge z) && \text{(by condition (M))} \\
 &= y \vee z.
 \end{aligned}$$

This example is typed as

```
\begin{align}
x &= x \wedge (y \vee z) \\
&\&\text{(by distributivity)}\label{E:DoAlign}\\
&\&(x \wedge y) \vee (x \wedge z) \\
&\&\text{(by condition (M))}\notag\\
&\&y \vee z.\notag
\end{align}
```

The rules for annotated alignment are similar to the rules of simple alignment. In each line, in addition to the alignment point marked by `&`, there is also a mark for the start of the annotation: `&&`.

3.4.3 Cases

The `cases` construct is a specialized matrix. It has to appear within a math environment such as the `equation` environment (see Section 3.4.1) or the `align` environment (see Section 3.4.2). Here is a typical example:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -x^2, & \text{if } x < 0; \\ \alpha + x, & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1; \\ x^2, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

is typed as follows:

```
\[
f(x)=
\begin{cases}
-x^{2}, & \&\text{if $x < 0$;}\\
\alpha + x, & \&\text{if $0 \leq x \leq 1$;}\\
x^{2}, & \&\text{otherwise.}
\end{cases}
\]
```

Notice how you can put inline math, opened and closed with \$, inside the argument of a `\text` command.

The rules for using the `cases` environment are the same as for matrices. Separate the lines with \\ and indicate the annotation with &.

*Your first article
and presentation*

4.1 The anatomy of an article

To begin, we use the sample article `intrart.tex` (in the `samples` folder) to examine the anatomy of an article. Copy it over to the `work` folder or type it, and save it in the `work` folder as we discuss the parts of an article.

Every L^AT_EX article has two parts, the preamble and the body. The *preamble* of an article is everything from the first line of the source file down to the line

```
\begin{document}
```

For a schematic view of an article, see Figure 4.1.

The preamble contains instructions affecting the entire document. The *only* required command in the preamble is the `\documentclass` command. There are other commands (such as the `\usepackage` commands) that must be placed in the preamble if they are used, but these commands do not have to be present in every document.

Here is the preamble of the introductory sample article:

```
% Introductory sample article: intrart.tex

\documentclass{amsart}
\usepackage{amssymb, latexsym}
\usepackage{graphicx}
\newtheorem{theorem}{Theorem}
\newtheorem{lemma}{Lemma}
\newtheorem{definition}{Definition}
\newtheorem{notation}{Notation}
```

The preamble specifies the *document class* and then the L^AT_EX enhancements, or *packages*, used in the article. The preamble can also specify additional commands that are used throughout the document, such as proclamation definitions, user-defined commands, and so on.

intrart.tex specifies the `amsart` document class. This class defines the format used by the AMS journals—and many others—for articles. L^AT_EX then loads two pack-

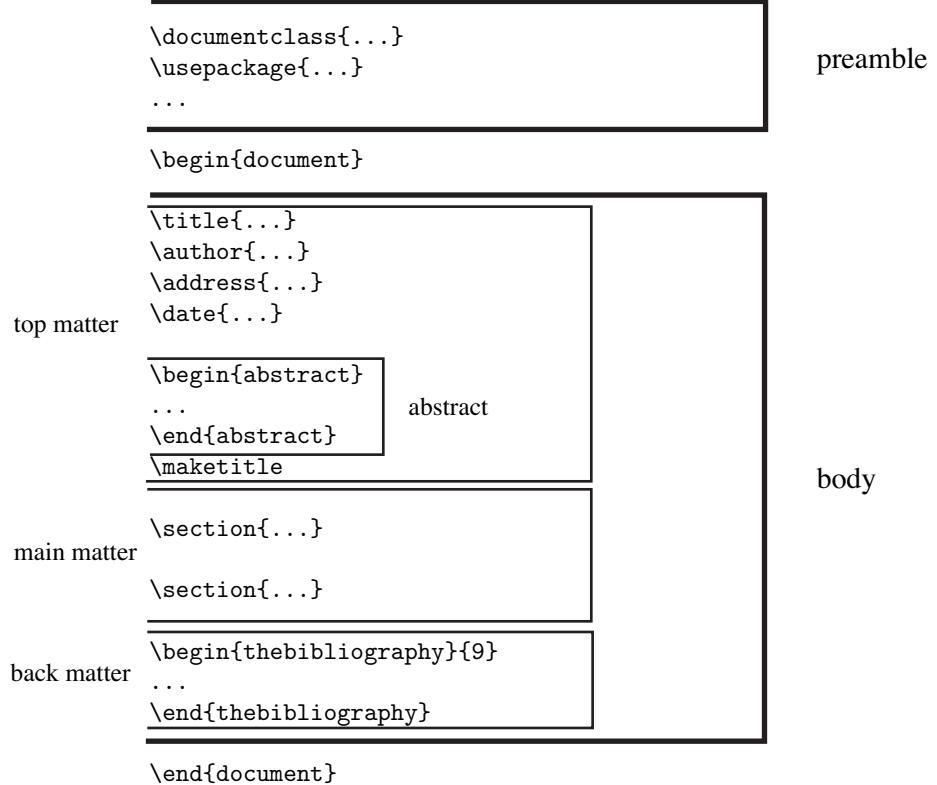


Figure 4.1: A schematic view of an article.

ages, `\textrm{latexsym}` and `\textrm{amssymb}`, that provide the names of some mathematical symbols. Finally, L^AT_EX loads the `graphicx` package, which we need because of the illustration.

The preamble concludes with the *proclamations*. A proclamation is a theorem, lemma, definition, corollary, note, or other similar construct. The `intrart.tex` article defines four proclamations. The first of these,

```
\newtheorem{theorem}{Theorem}
```

defines the `theorem` environment, which then can be used in the body of the article, as explained in Section 4.2.3. The other three are similar. L^AT_EX automatically numbers and formats proclamations.

The article proper, called the *body*, is the content of the `document` environment—it is between the lines

```
\begin{document}
```

and

```
\end{document}
```

as illustrated in Figure 4.1. The body of an article is split into several parts, starting with the *top matter* containing title page information and the abstract. The top matter follows the line

```
\begin{document}
```

and concludes with the line

```
\maketitle
```

Here is the top matter of the introductory sample article:

```
\title{A construction of complete-simple\\
distributive lattices}
\author{George~A. Menuhin}
\address{Computer Science Department\\
University of Winnebago\\
Winnebago, MN 53714}
\date{March 15, 2006}

\begin{abstract}
In this note, we prove that there exist
\emph{complete-simple distributive lattices,}
that is, complete distributive lattices
with only two complete congruences.
\end{abstract}

\maketitle
```

And here is the rest of the body of the introductory sample article with some commentary, exclusive of the bibliography:

```
\section{Introduction}\label{S:intro}
In this note, we prove the following result:
```

```
\begin{theorem}
There exists an infinite complete distributive
lattice $\sim K$  with only the two trivial complete
congruence relations.
\end{theorem}
```

```
\section{The  $\prod^*$  construction}\label{S:P*}
The following construction is crucial in the proof
of our Theorem (see Figure $\sim \text{ref}\{F:\text{products}\}$ ):
```

```
\begin{definition}\label{D:P*}
Let  $D_{\{i\}}$ , for  $i \in I$ , be complete distributive
lattices satisfying condition $\sim \text{textup}\{(J)\}$ . Their
 $\prod^*$  product is defined as follows:
\[
\begin{aligned}
\prod^* ( D_{\{i\}} \mid i \in I ) &= \\
&\prod_i ( D_{\{i\}}^{-} \mid i \in I ) + 1;
\end{aligned}
\]
that is,  $\prod^* ( D_{\{i\}} \mid i \in I )$  is
 $\prod_i ( D_{\{i\}}^{-} \mid i \in I )$  with a new
unit element.
\end{definition}
```

```
\begin{notation}
If  $i \in I$  and  $d \in D_{\{i\}}^{-}$ , then
\[
\langle \dots, 0, \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle
\]
is the element of  $\prod^* ( D_{\{i\}} \mid i \in I )$  whose
i-th component is  $d$  and all the other components
are  $0$ .
\end{notation}
```

See also Ernest \sim T. Moynahan $\sim \text{cite}\{eM57a\}$.

Next we verify the following result:

```
\begin{theorem}\label{T:P*}
Let $D_{\{i\}}$, $i \in I$, be complete distributive
lattices satisfying condition~\textup{(J)}.
Let $\Theta$ be a complete congruence relation on
$\Pi^{\{*\}} ( D_{\{i\}} \mid i \in I )$.
If there exist $i \in I$ and $d \in D_{\{i\}}$ with
$d < 1_{\{i\}}$ such that, for all $d \leq c < 1_{\{i\}}$,
\begin{equation}\label{E:cong1}
\langle \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \equiv
\langle \dots, c, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle
\pod{\Theta},
\end{equation}
then $\Theta = \iota$.
\end{theorem}
```

We include an illustration, `products.eps` or `products.pdf` (in your `samples` folder). We copy them over to the `work` folder and load the `graphicx` package. We name the illustration in the `figure` environment. The illustration must be in the graphic image file formats EPS or PDF (see Chapter 13.1.2). We left the argument of the `\caption` command empty—it normally contains the name or a description of the figure. The illustration is centered with the `\centering` command (see Section 6.3).

```
\begin{figure}[hbt]
\centering\includegraphics{products}
\caption{}\label{Fi:products}
\end{figure}
```

The `figure` environment *floats*, that is, \LaTeX decides where to place the typeset figure. We can influence \LaTeX 's choice (see Section 10.4.3).

Then we place a proof in a `proof` environment.

```
\begin{proof}
Since
\begin{equation}\label{E:cong2}
\langle \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \equiv
\langle \dots, c, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle
\pod{\Theta},
\end{equation}
and $\Theta$ is a complete congruence relation,
it follows from condition~(J) that
\begin{equation}\label{E:cong}
\langle \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \equiv
\bigvee ( \langle \dots, c, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle
\mid d \leq c < 1 ) \pod{\Theta}.
\end{equation}

```

```
\end{equation}

Let $j \in I$, $j \neq i$, and let $a \in D_{\{j\}^{\{-\}}}$.  

Meeting both sides of the congruence \eqref{E:cong2}  

with $\langle \dots, a, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle$,  

we obtain that  

\begin{equation}\label{E:comp}
0 = \langle \dots, a, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle
\pod{\Theta},
\end{equation}
Using the completeness of $\Theta$ and \eqref{E:comp},  

we get:  

\[
0 \equiv \bigvee (\langle \dots, a, \dots, 0,
\dots \rangle \mid a \in D_{\{j\}^{\{-\}}}) = 1
\pod{\Theta},
\]
hence $\Theta = \iota$.
\end{proof}
```

At the end of the body, the *bibliographic entries* are typed between the lines

```
\begin{thebibliography}{9}
```

and

```
\end{thebibliography}
```

There are fewer than 10 references in this article, so we tell L^AT_EX to make room for single-digit numbering by providing the argument 9 to the *thebibliography* environment. We use 99 if the number of references is between 10 and 99. The typeset bibliography is titled References.

The bibliography of *intrart.tex* is structured as follows:

```
\begin{thebibliography}{9}

\bibitem{sF90}
Soo-Key Foo,  

\emph{Lattice Constructions},  

Ph.D. thesis,  

University of Winnebago, Winnebago, MN, December, 1990.

\bibitem{gM68}
George~A. Menuhin,
```

```
\emph{Universal algebra}.  
D.^Van Nostrand, Princeton, 1968.  
  
\bibitem{eM57}  
Ernest^T. Moynahan,  
\emph{On a problem of M. Stone},  
Acta Math. Acad. Sci. Hungar. \textbf{8} (1957),  
455--460.  
  
\bibitem{eM57a}  
Ernest^T. Moynahan,  
\emph{Ideals and congruence relations in  
lattices}. II,  
Magyar Tud. Akad. Mat. Fiz. Oszt. K\"{o}zl.  
\textbf{9} (1957), 417--434.  
  
\end{thebibliography}
```

The body and the article end when the `document` environment is closed with

```
\end{document}
```

4.1.1 The typeset sample article

On the next two pages, you find the typeset `intrart.tex`, the introductory sample article.

A CONSTRUCTION OF COMPLETE-SIMPLE DISTRIBUTIVE LATTICES

GEORGE A. MENUHIN

ABSTRACT. In this note, we prove that there exist *complete-simple distributive lattices*, that is, complete distributive lattices with only two complete congruences.

1. INTRODUCTION

In this note, we prove the following result:

Theorem 1. *There exists an infinite complete distributive lattice K with only the two trivial complete congruence relations.*

2. THE Π^* CONSTRUCTION

The following construction is crucial in the proof of our Theorem (see Figure 1):

Definition 1. *Let D_i , for $i \in I$, be complete distributive lattices satisfying condition (J). Their Π^* product is defined as follows:*

$$\Pi^*(D_i \mid i \in I) = \Pi(D_i^- \mid i \in I) + 1;$$

that is, $\Pi^(D_i \mid i \in I)$ is $\Pi(D_i^- \mid i \in I)$ with a new unit element.*

Notation 1. *If $i \in I$ and $d \in D_i^-$, then*

$$\langle \dots, 0, \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle$$

is the element of $\Pi^(D_i \mid i \in I)$ whose i -th component is d and all the other components are 0.*

See also Ernest T. Moynahan [4].

Next we verify the following result:

Theorem 2. *Let D_i , $i \in I$, be complete distributive lattices satisfying condition (J). Let Θ be a complete congruence relation on $\Pi^*(D_i \mid i \in I)$. If there exist $i \in I$ and $d \in D_i$ with $d < 1_i$ such that, for all $d \leq c < 1_i$,*

$$(1) \quad \langle \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \equiv \langle \dots, c, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \quad (\Theta),$$

then $\Theta = \iota$.

Proof. Since

$$(2) \quad \langle \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \equiv \langle \dots, c, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \quad (\Theta),$$

and Θ is a complete congruence relation, it follows from condition (J) that

$$(3) \quad \langle \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \equiv \bigvee (\langle \dots, c, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \mid d \leq c < 1) \quad (\Theta).$$

Date: March 15, 2006.

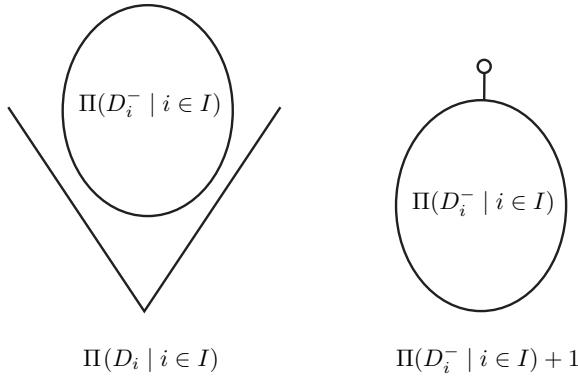


FIGURE 1

Let $j \in I$, $j \neq i$, and let $a \in D_j^-$. Meeting both sides of the congruence (2) with $\langle \dots, a, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle$, we obtain that

$$(4) \quad 0 = \langle \dots, a, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \quad (\Theta),$$

Using the completeness of Θ and (4), we get:

$$0 \equiv \bigvee (\langle \dots, a, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \mid a \in D_j^-) = 1 \quad (\Theta),$$

hence $\Theta = \iota$. □

REFERENCES

- [1] Soo-Key Foo, *Lattice Constructions*, Ph.D. thesis, University of Winnebago, Winnebago, MN, December, 1990.
- [2] George A. Menuhin, *Universal algebra*. D. Van Nostrand, Princeton, 1968.
- [3] Ernest T. Moynahan, *On a problem of M. Stone*, Acta Math. Acad. Sci. Hungar. **8** (1957), 455–460.
- [4] Ernest T. Moynahan, *Ideals and congruence relations in lattices*. II, Magyar Tud. Akad. Mat. Fiz. Oszt. Közl. **9** (1957), 417–434.

COMPUTER SCIENCE DEPARTMENT, UNIVERSITY OF WINNEBAGO, WINNEBAGO, MN 53714

4.2 An article template

In this section, you create an article template. To start a new article, open the template and start writing!

Make a copy of `intrart.tex` and give the copy an appropriate name. I named mine `gg.tex` (it is in the `samples` folder). Remember the naming rule (page 4): The name should have no spaces, no special characters, and end with `.tex`. So the name `my template.tex` is not good, but `MyTemplate.tex` is fine.

4.2.1 Editing the top matter

Edit the top matter to contain the relevant information, e.g., title and address, for your template. Here are some simple rules to follow.

Rule ■ Top matter

1. `\thanks` places an unmarked footnote at the bottom of the first page, for instance to acknowledge research support. If it is not needed, comment it out.
 2. Separate the lines of your address with `\\"`. Do not put a `\\"` at the end of the last line.
 3. `\date{\today}` typesets today's date. If you do not want *any* date to appear, comment out the `\date` command. For a specific date, such as March 15, 2006, type `\date{March 15, 2006}`.
 4. The `\title` command is the only required command. The others are optional.
-

Actually, if you do not give the `\maketitle` command, even the `\title` command is optional. On the other hand, if you do give the `\maketitle` command and omit the `\title` command, then you get the error message

```
! Undefined control sequence.  
<argument> \shorttitle
```

1.27 `\maketitle`

Now delete all the content of the article, leaving you with the skeleton. Here is the edited `gg.tex` (it is in your `samples` folder):

```
% GG's article template: gg.tex  
  
\documentclass{amsart}  
\usepackage{amssymb, latexsym}  
\usepackage{graphicx}
```

```

\newtheorem{theorem}{Theorem}
\newtheorem{lemma}{Lemma}
\newtheorem{definition}{Definition}
\newtheorem{notation}{Notation}

\begin{document}
\title{Title!}
\author{George Gr\"atzer}
\address{Department of Mathematics\\
    University of Manitoba\\
    Winnipeg, MB R3T 2N2\\
    Canada}
\date{\today}

\begin{abstract}
To come!
\end{abstract}

\maketitle

\section{Introduction}\label{S:intro}

\begin{thebibliography}{9}

\end{thebibliography}

\end{document}

```

I also made a version for a joint article with another author: `gg2.tex` (see the `samples` folder). It adds the lines

```

\author{Second author}
\address{line1\\
    line2\\
    line3\\
    line4}

```

before the `\date` command.

When I start writing an article, I open `gg.tex` or `gg2.tex`, save it under a new name, and edit the top matter. Here are two more rules about the top matter to keep in mind:

Rule ■ Top matter (continued)

5. If necessary, break the title into separate lines with \\. Do not put a \\ at the end of the last line.
 6. Multiple authors get separate \author and \address commands.
-

4.2.2 Sectioning

An article, as a rule, is divided into sections. To start the section *Introduction*, type

```
\section{Introduction}\label{S:intro}
```

after the \maketitle command. *Introduction* typesets as the title of the section. I use the convention that S: starts the label for a section, so the label is S:intro (or something similar). The section's number is automatically assigned by L^AT_EX. You can refer to this section number with \ref{S:intro}:

In Section~\ref{S:intro}, we introduce

The command \section* produces an unnumbered section.

Sections have subsections, and subsections have subsubsections. The corresponding commands are

```
\subsection \subsubsection
```

Their unnumbered variants are

```
\subsection* \subsubsection*
```

4.2.3 Invoking proclamations

In the preamble of the article *intrart.tex*, we defined the theorem, lemma, definition, and notation proclamations. These proclamations define environments.

For example, you type a theorem within a theorem environment. The body of the theorem, that is, the part of the source file that produces the theorem, is typed between the lines

```
\begin{theorem}\label{T:xxx}
```

and

```
\end{theorem}
```

where T:xxx is the label for the theorem. You should replace xxx with a label that is somewhat descriptive of the contents of your theorem. L^AT_EX automatically assigns a number to the theorem, and the theorem can be referenced by using a command of the form \ref{T:xxx}.

4.2.4 Inserting references

The works to be listed are placed in the bibliography. Below are typical entries for the most frequently used types of references, an article in a journal, a book, a Ph.D. thesis, and a technical report. For more examples, see the bibliographic template file, `bibl.tpl`, in the `samples` folder.

```
\begin{thebibliography}{9}
  \bibitem{sF90}
    Soo-Key Foo,
    \emph{Lattice Constructions},
    Ph.D. thesis,
    University of Winnebago, Winnebago, MN,
    December, 1990.
  \bibitem{gM68}
    George~A. Menuhin,
    \emph{Universal algebra}.
    D.~Van Nostrand, Princeton, 1968.
  \bibitem{eM57}
    Ernest~T. Moynahan,
    \emph{On a problem of M. Stone},
    Acta Math. Acad. Sci. Hungar. \textbf{8} (1957),
    455--460.
  \bibitem{eM57a}
    Ernest~T. Moynahan,
    \emph{Ideals and congruence relations in
    lattices.} II,
    Magyar Tud. Akad. Mat. Fiz. Oszt. K\"ozl.
    \textbf{9} (1957), 417--434.
\end{thebibliography}
```

Each item listed in the bibliography can be referenced in the body of the article. You reference with the `\cite` command. The argument is the argument of the `\bibitem` command. So to reference Menuhin's article, type

```
\cite{gM68}
```

which typesets as [2] since Menuhin's article is the second in the list. So

□
this result was first published in [2]
└

is typed as

```
this result was first published in~\cite{gM68}
```

How you write each label is up to you, subject only to the rule in Section 10.4.2, provided the labels are unique. I use the convention that the label for a `\bibitem` consists of the initials of the author and the year of publication. For example, a publication by Andrew B. Reich in 1987 would have the label `aR87` (a second publication by that author from that year would be `aR87a`). For joint publications, the label consists of the initials of the authors and the year of publication. For example, a publication by John Bradford and Andrew B. Reich in 1987 would have the label `BR87`.

You have to arrange the references in your document’s `thebibliography` environment in the order you wish to see them. `LATEX` only takes care of the numbering and the citations in the text.

4.3 *On using L^AT_EX*

Now that you are ready to type your first article, we give you some pointers on using `LATEX`.

4.3.1 *L^AT_EX error messages*

You probably make a number of mistakes in your first article. These mistakes fall into the following categories:

1. Typographical errors, which `LATEX` blindly typesets
2. Errors in mathematical formulas or in the formatting of the text
3. Errors in your instructions to `LATEX`, that is, in commands and environments

Typographical errors can be corrected by viewing and spell checking the typeset article, finding the errors, and then editing the source file.

Mistakes in the second and third categories probably trigger errors during the typesetting process, such as the math errors in Section 3.2. Some of these mistakes may have to be corrected before your article can be completely typeset.

We now look at some examples of the third class of errors by deliberately introducing a number of mistakes into the source file of the article `intrart.tex` (in your `samples` folder, source file on pages 35–41, and shown typeset on pages 42–43), and examining the error messages that occur.

When `LATEX` displays a `?` prompt, you can either try to continue typesetting the document by pressing Return, or type `x` to stop typesetting immediately. See Section D.4 for other options.

Experiment 1 In `intrart.tex`, go to line 20 by using your editor’s Go to Line command and remove the closing brace so that it reads

```
\begin{abstract}
```

When you typeset `intrart.tex`, L^AT_EX reports a problem:

```
Runaway argument?
{abstract In this note, we prove that there exist
\emph {complete-sim\ETC.
! Paragraph ended before \begin was complete.
<to be read again>
        \par
1.26
```

Line 26 of the file is the line after `\end{abstract}`. The error message informs you that the name of the environment that ends before line 26 is not completed before the end of the paragraph. Press Return to tell L^AT_EX to typeset the remainder of the article, leaving out the abstract.

`Runaway argument?` is an error message that comes up often. It usually means that the argument of a command is either longer than expected or it contains material that the argument cannot accept. Most often a closing brace solves the problem, as in the experiment.

Experiment 2 Now correct line 20, then go to line 25 and change it from

```
\end{abstract}
```

to

```
\end{abstrac}
```

and typeset the article again. L^AT_EX informs you of another error:

```
! LaTeX Error: \begin{abstract} on input line 20
ended by \end{abstrac}.
```

```
1.25 \end{abstrac}
```

This is perfect. L^AT_EX correctly analyzes the problem and tells you where to make the change.

You may continue typesetting the article by pressing Return. L^AT_EX then gives you the message:

```
! Missing } inserted.
<inserted text>
        }
1.25 \end{abstrac}
```

The missing `}` inserted is the “special brace” `\end{abstract}` (more about this in Section 5.3.2). Press Return. L^AT_EX recovers from this error and the article is typeset correctly.

Experiment 3 Instead of correcting the error in line 25, comment it out with

```
% \end{abstract}
```

and also comment out the four lines of the `figure` environment using block comment. Introduce an additional error in line 96. This line reads

```
and $\Theta$ is a complete congruence relation,
```

Change `\Theta` to `\Teta`:

```
and $\Teta$ is a complete congruence relation,
```

Now, when you typeset the article, L^AT_EX reports

```
! Undefined control sequence.
```

```
<recently read>\Teta
```

```
1.96 and $\Teta
```

```
$ is a complete congruence relation,
```

Pressing Return results in the message

```
! LaTeX Error: \begin{abstract} on input line 20
ended by \end{document}.
```

```
Type H <return> for immediate help.
```

```
...
```

```
1.150 \end{document}
```

These two mistakes are easy to identify: `\Teta` is a misspelling of `\Theta`, and since `\end{abstract}` is missing, L^AT_EX is trying to match

```
\begin{abstract}
```

with

```
\end{document}
```

Now undo the changes you made to lines 25 and 96. Uncomment the figure.

Experiment 4 In line 42, delete the closing brace of the `\label` command:

```
\begin{definition}\label{D:P*
```

This results in a message for line 54, the blank line following the paragraph, that

```
! Paragraph ended before \label was complete.
```

This is easy to understand. You cannot begin a new paragraph within the argument of a `\label` command.

Undo the change to line 42.

Experiment 5 Add a blank line following line 58:

```
\langle \dots, 0, \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle
```

This change results in the message

```
! Missing $ inserted.  
<inserted text>  
$  
1.59
```

There can be no blank lines within a displayed math environment. L^AT_EX catches the mistake, but the message itself is misleading. Pressing Return does not help; you cannot recover from the error. Delete the blank line.

Experiment 6 Add a \$ somewhere in line 58 (such errors often occur when cutting and pasting formulas):

```
\langle \$\dots, 0, \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle
```

You get the message:

```
! Display math should end with $$.  
<to be read again>  
          \protect  
1.58   \langle \$\dots,  
           , 0, \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle
```

Maybe this could be more to the point?

Error messages from L^AT_EX are not always helpful, but there is always some information that can be gleaned from them. Try to identify the structure, that is, the command or environment, that causes the error—read the section of this book that describes that command or environment. This should help you correct the error. Keep in mind that the error could be quite far from the line L^AT_EX indicates, but it is always on or before that line in the source file.

If you have difficulty isolating a problem, block comment all but the paragraph you suspect might have problems. If necessary, split a large paragraph into smaller pieces.

Tip Typeset often.

To some extent, you can avoid having to isolate problems by following this tip. For instance, if I were to typeset *First Steps into L^AT_EX* [29], with the closing brace of the first \caption command on line 480 of the source file missing, I would get the error message

```
! Text line contains an invalid character.
1.1227 ...pletely irreducible^^?
```

where the reference is to line 1227, about 700 lines removed from the actual error. However, if the only thing I did before typesetting was to insert that figure with its incorrect caption command, at least I would know where to look for errors. If you make a dozen corrections and then typeset, you may not know where to start.

4.3.2 Logical and visual design

The typeset version of `intrart.tex` (pp. 42–43) looks impressive. To produce such articles, you need to understand that there are two aspects to article design: *visual* and *logical*.

As an example, let us look at a theorem from `intrart.tex` (see the typeset form of the theorem on page 43). You tell L^AT_EX that you want to state a theorem by using a `theorem` environment:

```
\begin{theorem}\label{T:P*}
Let $D_{\{i\}}$, $i \in I$, be complete distributive
lattices satisfying condition~\textup{(J)}.
Let $\Theta$ be a complete congruence relation on
$\Pi^{\{*\}} ( D_{\{i\}} \mid i \in I )$.
If there exist $i \in I$ and $d \in D_{\{i\}}$ with
$d < 1_{\{i\}}$ such that, for all $d \leq c < 1_{\{i\}}$,
\begin{equation}\label{E:cong1}
\langle \dots, d, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle \equiv
\langle \dots, c, \dots, 0, \dots \rangle
\pod{\Theta},
\end{equation}
then $\Theta = \iota$.
\end{theorem}
```

The logical part of the design is choosing to define a theorem by placing material inside a `theorem` environment. For the visual design, L^AT_EX makes hundreds of decisions. Could you have specified all of the spacing, font size changes, centering, numbering, and so on? Maybe, but would you *want* to? And would you want to repeat that process for every theorem in your document?

Even if you did, you would have spent a great deal of time and energy on the *visual design* of the theorem rather than on the *logical design* of your article. The idea

behind \LaTeX is that you should concentrate on what you have to say and let \LaTeX take care of the visual design.

This approach allows you to easily alter the visual design by changing the document class (or its options, see Sections 11.5, 12.1.2, and 18.1). Section 11.1 provides some examples. If you code the visual design into the article—hard coding it, as a programmer would say—such changes are much harder to accomplish, for you and for the journal publishing the article.

4.4 *Converting an article to a presentation*

To produce a document in \LaTeX for use as a presentation, you have to output it as a PDF file. You make your presentation using a PDF viewer such as Adobe Reader or print the pages of the PDF file on transparencies and use a projector.

So a *presentation* is a PDF file. To display the presentation, connect your computer to a projector. Open the PDF file in Adobe Reader, put it in full screen mode. Then project the presentation a page at a time by pressing the space bar or the forward and back arrow keys.

In \LaTeX , you use a presentation package—really, a document class—to prepare such a PDF file. We deal with presentations in detail in Chapter 14, but as a quick introduction, we convert `intrart.tex` into a presentation.

For the conversion, we use the presentation package $\text{Foil}\text{\TeX}$, while in Chapter 14 we discuss the `beamer` package. To use the $\text{Foil}\text{\TeX}$ package, we have to learn only one new command, `\foilhead`.

Open `intrart.tex`, save it as `intropres.tex` in the work folder. We introduce some changes to the document to prepare it for the conversion. Once you are satisfied with the changes made, the `.tex` file created for $\text{Foil}\text{\TeX}$ is typeset so as to produce the PDF file. For WinEdt, click on the PDF TeXify icon. For TeXShop, just click on Typeset. For other \TeX installations, check your user manual on how to create a PDF output.

4.4.1 *Preliminary changes*

Make the following changes in the preamble, top matter, and abstract.

1. Change the first line to
`% Introductory presentation:intropres.tex`
2. Change the documentclass to `foils`.
3. Add the line
`\usepackage{amsmath}`
 after the documentclass line. We have to do this because $\text{Foil}\text{\TeX}$ does not automatically load the AMS math package.

4. Delete the definitions of `theorem`, `lemma`, and `definition`. Foil \TeX redefines these.

5. Copy the address into the `\author` command:

```
\author{George~A. Menuhin\\
Computer Science Department\\
University of Winnebago\\
Winnebago, MN 53714}
```

and delete the `\address` command. This may seem strange, but it is necessary because Foil \TeX is based on a legacy document class that does not have an `\address` command (see Chapter 12).

6. Move the abstract after the `\maketitle` command, as was customary in legacy document classes.

7. Add the `[scale=2]` option to the `\includegraphics` command, so the command becomes

```
\centering\includegraphics[scale=2]{products}
```

Foil \TeX uses fonts in 20 point size, twice the usual size. So it is appropriate that we scale up the illustration to 200%.

So the new version is

```
% Introductory presentation:intropres.tex

\documentclass{foils}
\usepackage{amsmath}
\usepackage{amssymb, latexsym}
\usepackage{graphicx}

\begin{document}
\title{A construction of complete-simple\\
distributive lattices}
\author{George~A. Menuhin\\
Computer Science Department\\
University of Winnebago\\
Winnebago, MN 53714}
\date{March 15, 2006}

\maketitle
\begin{abstract}
In this presentation, we prove that there exist
```

```
\emph{complete-simple distributive lattices,}
that is, complete distributive lattices
with only two complete congruences.
\end{abstract}
```

Declarations in the body

In your L^AT_EX editor, perform four search and replace operations in the body of the article. Change all of the following:

1. {theorem} to {Theorem}
2. {lemma} to {Lemma}
3. {definition} to {Definition}
4. {proof} to {Proof}

FoilT_EX defines and uses the capitalized versions.

Sectioning

Comment out all the \section commands. FoilT_EX uses the \foilhead command to break the material into pages and also as a substitute for sectioning.

4.4.2 Making the pages

We cut the presentation into pages (transparencies or foils) by inserting as many page breaking commands of FoilT_EX, \foilhead{}, as seems appropriate. The argument of the command becomes the “title” for the page. If the argument is empty, the page has no title.

Add the \foilhead{The result} command after the abstract. This ends the title page and adds the title The result to the next page.

See the intropres.tex document for all the other \foilhead{} commands we have added.

4.4.3 Fine tuning

We have eliminated the equation numbering, because it would make the equations too wide. Also, in a presentation, references to another page are not recommended. We made some additional changes to accommodate that we have fewer characters per line. Compare the documents intrart.tex and intropres.tex to see all the changes. Note how in the PDF file the fonts are automatically changed to sans serif, because sans serif text is easier to read when projected. The font size is 20pt, twice the size of the font in the article.

Of course, `intropres.tex` is not the most elegant presentation. But I hope it helps you to make your first presentation. On pages 57 and 58, we show the first two pages of this presentation.

There are, of course, a number of useful commands in `FoilTEX` in addition to the one we used, `\foilhead`. We did not even do justice to this one command. It has an optional argument to enlarge or shrink the space between the header and the body of the foil. So

```
\foilhead[-.5in]{A diagram}
```

shrinks that space by half an inch. This is especially useful with large diagrams.

For numerous other features of `FoilTEX`, see the user manual [33].

A construction of complete-simple distributive lattices

George A. Menuhin
Computer Science Department
University of Winnebago
Winnebago, MN 53714

March 15, 2006

Abstract

In this presentation, we prove that there exist *complete-simple distributive lattices*, that is, complete distributive lattices with only two complete congruences.

The result

In this presentation, we prove the following result:

Theorem 1. *There exists an infinite complete distributive lattice K with only the two trivial complete congruence relations.*

APPENDIX**A**

Installation

In case you do not already have a L^AT_EX installation, in Sections A.1 and A.2, we describe how to install L^AT_EX on your computer, a PC or a Mac. The installation is much easier if you obtain T_EX Live 2007 (or later) from the T_EX Users Group, TUG (see Section E.2). It contains both the T_EX implementations we discuss.

No installation is given for UNIX computers. The attraction of UNIX to its users is the incredibly large number of options, from the UNIX dialect, to the shell, the editor, and so on. A typical UNIX user downloads the code and compiles the system. This is obviously beyond the scope of this book. Nevertheless, T_EX Live 2007 (or later) from the T_EX Users Group supplies the compiled (binaries) of L^AT_EX for a number of UNIX variants.

First read Chapter 1, so that in this Appendix you recognize the terminology we introduce there. I will assume that you become sufficiently familiar with your L^AT_EX distribution to be able to perform the editing cycle with the sample documents.

A.1 *L^AT_EX on a PC*

On a PC, most mathematicians use MiK_Te_X and the editor WinEdt. So it seems appropriate that we start there.

A.1.1 *Installing* MiK_Te_X

If you made a donation to MiK_Te_X or if you have the T_EX Live 2007 (or later) from the T_EX Users Group, then you have a CD or DVD with the MiK_Te_X installer. Installation then is in one step and very fast. In case you do not have this CD or DVD, we show how to install from the Internet. To begin, go to the MiK_Te_X home page:

<http://miktex.org>

and under the Download/Install click on the version you want to install.¹ You are directed to the MiK_Te_X download page, where you click on Download MikTeX Net Installer. This takes you to a list of the download sites, called “mirrors”. Choose one geographically close to you and click Download next to your pick. You are asked whether to Run or Save the installer application. Choose Save to save and now you have the setup application on your computer.

Run setup and the MiK_Te_X Setup Wizard should start automatically. Then click Next and choose the task, Download only. Click Next again to choose the size of the download and choose Complete MikTeX. Again you have to choose a download site, and click Next a few more times, then Start, and the download starts. When it is complete, almost 35,000 files later, click Close. Now you have the files you need in the next step.

The next task is installation. Run setup again, and up comes the Wizard. Click Next, and the task Install MikTeX is selected for you. Click Next, make sure you select Complete MikTeX. Click Next a few more times, select the default paper size, click Start, and the installation starts. When it is finished, click Close.

A.1.2 *Installing* WinEdt

You can download WinEdt from its Web site and use it for 30 days before you pay the license fee. We now install WinEdt from the CD you are sent after you pay the license fee. Go to License and Registration at

<http://www.winedt.com>

Put the WinEdt installer CD in the DVD drive. The WinEdt Setup Wizard starts automatically. After accepting the licence, click Next a few times until WinEdt is installed and then click Finish.

After installation, the
WinEdt Configuration Wizard

¹We follow the instructions for MiK_Te_X 2.5. Hopefully, this will also assist you with later versions.

starts automatically. Click on the `File Associations` tab and click on `Modify file type associations...` under `Current User`, which is down the right side of the window, and then click `OK`. This gives all *TeX* files a lion icon and automatically associates them with *WinEdt* so that double clicking a *TeX* file automatically opens it in *WinEdt*. Clicking `OK` to close the Wizard.

WinEdt's claim to fame is its incredible customizability. Once you become familiar with the basic operations, you can make *WinEdt* behave the way you like.

A.1.3 *The editing cycle*

In Section 1.2 you created the `work` folder for your work files. Start *WinEdt* by double clicking the *WinEdt* icon and open the file `note1.tex` in `work`, see the top half of Figure A.1. Observe:

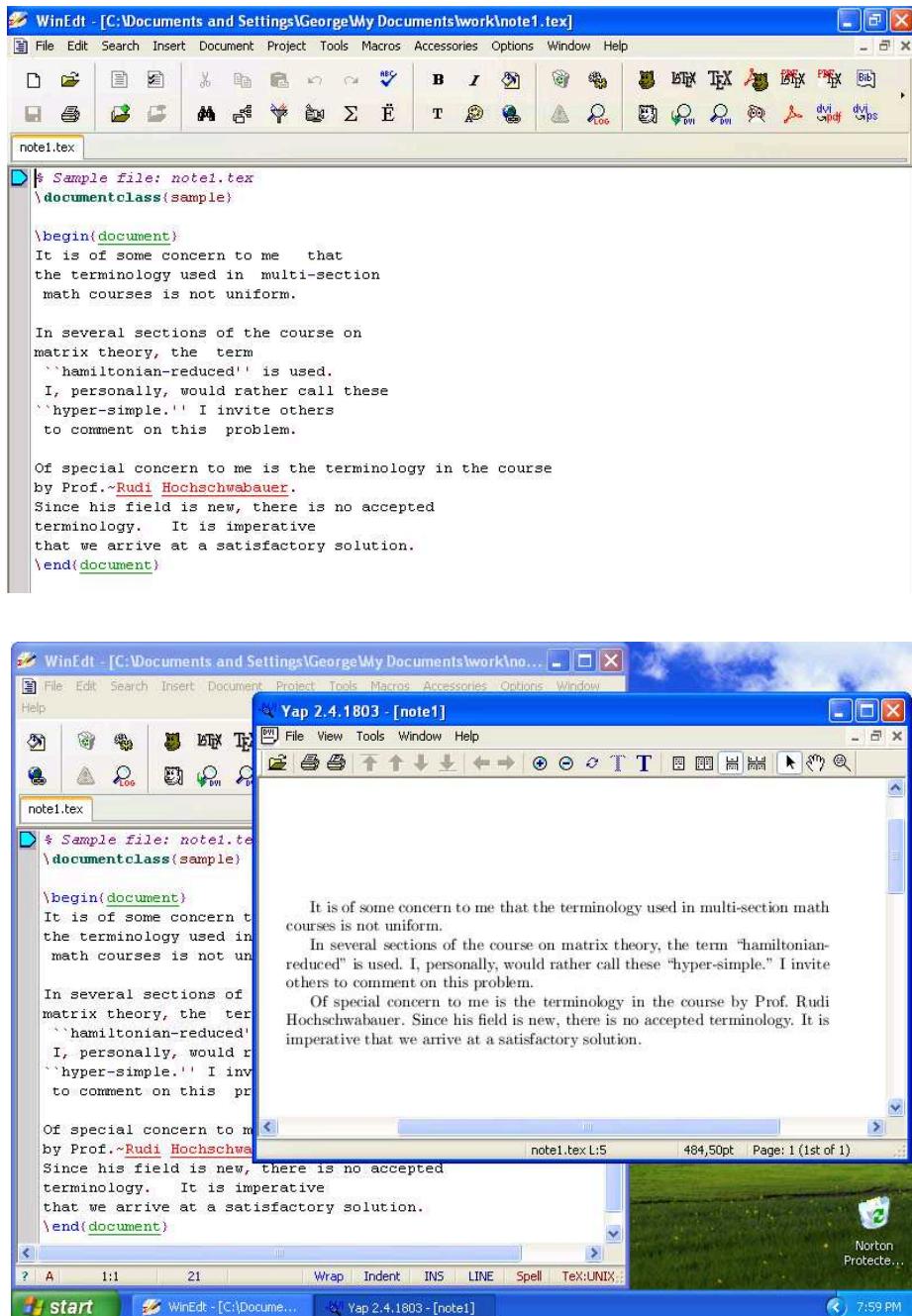
- In the right-hand corner, under the X button, the close application button, there is a small black x. All windows of *WinEdt* have such an x, this is the *close window* button.
- There are two rows of icons. The seventh from the right in the first row, a darkened lion's head, is the *TeXify* button, use it to typeset your *LATEX* file. If you are not sure what an icon represents, let the cursor hover over it, and a brief description appears.
- A blue arrow in the left margin points at the line where the cursor is.

Click on the *TeXify* icon. *MiKTeX* typesets `note1.tex` and produces another file, `note1.dvi`. The new file is displayed by the application *Yap*, which was automatically installed for you with *MiKTeX*. Rearrange the *WinEdt* and *Yap* windows. You should get an arrangement similar to the bottom half of Figure A.1.

A.1.4 *Making a mistake*

WinEdt tells you if there is a mistake in your source file. To see what happens, click on the *WinEdt* window, and add a \ in line 11 of `note1.tex`, so that personally reads \personally. This makes \personally a command, which is a mistake (see Chapter 2). Click on the *TeXify* icon. We get the *TeXify ...* window, as in the top part of Figure A.2. At the ? prompt, type x for “exit” and press Return.² You now see three windows, as shown in the bottom half of Figure A.2. The *Yap* window is mostly covered up. There is a new window, `note1.log`, the *log* window, in which the information from the *TeXify ...* window is recorded. In the *WinEdt* window, the blue arrow line pointer on the left indicates the offending line, and the mistake, \personally, is highlighted in red. Correct the mistake by deleting \, click on *TeXify*, and you are back in business.

²The user, recorded on Figure A.2, typed s for “scroll mode”. *LATEX* then completes the typesetting without stopping for errors (see Section D.4).

Figure A.1: `note1.tex` opened in WinEdt and typeset.

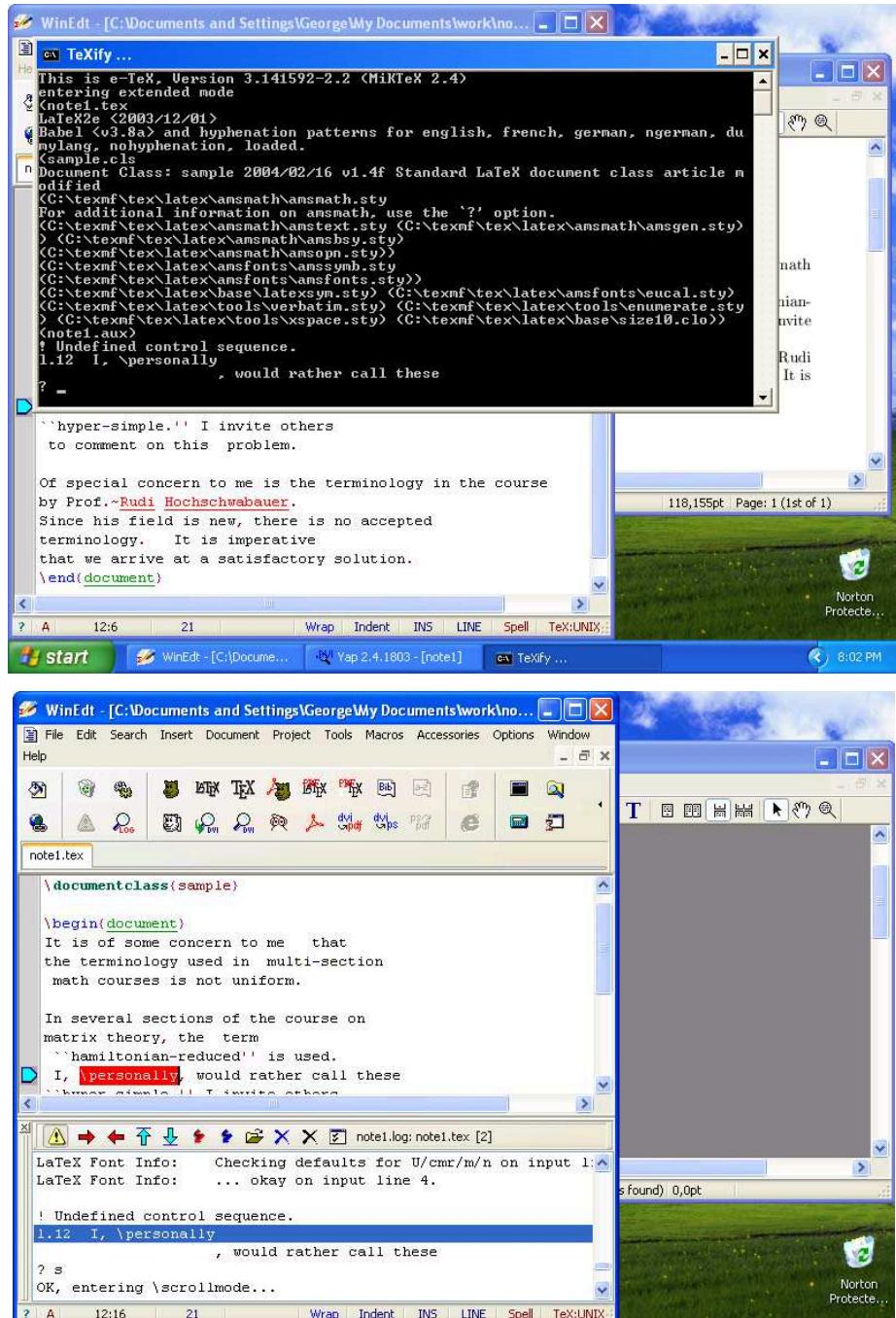


Figure A.2: The mistake identified and localized (showing the log window).

A.1.5 Three productivity tools

Now we see how the three productivity tools introduced in Section 1.4 are implemented in WinEdt and MiKTeX.

Synchronization This is known as *inverse search* in WinEdt and MiKTeX. To set it up, open Yap, for example, by Texifyng the document `note1.tex`. Choose the menu item `View>Options>Inverse DVI Search`. A list now displays the editors detected. Select WinEdt, click `Apply`, and click `OK`. You are done.

- To jump from the typeset file in Yap to the source file in WinEdt, double click a word in the typeset file.
- To jump from the source file to the typeset file, click on the DVI Search icon, the magnifying glass with the green leaf attached to the handle. You then jump to the typeset file, where a marker indicates the beginning of the typeset version of the source line the cursor is on.

Block comment Select a number of lines in a source document and choose the menu option `Edit>Move/Fill>Insert comment`. Block uncomment is done with `Edit>Move/Fill>Remove comment`.

Go to line This is done with `Search>Go to Line...`

The icons and menu options all have keyboard equivalents. For instance, `Go to line` is `Ctrl+G` and `TeXify` is `Ctrl+Shift` and then press `x`.

A.1.6 An important folder

When using MikTeX, where do you put new style files and packages?

You can always place these files in your working folder. This is the simplest, but they will not be available when working with files outside that folder.

If you want these files accessible everywhere (from all folders), then make a new folder in the LocalTeXMF folder tree, say

`C:\LocalTeXMF\MyStyles`

and place these files there. In order for MiKTeX to find these files, you now need to update the MiKTeX `FileName Database`. Do this:

`All Programs>MiKTeX>MiKTeX Options>Refresh FNDB`

or access it directly via the drop down menus from within WinEdt:

`Accessories>MiKTeX Options`

The best way to install new packages from CTAN is via the `Package Manager`, which is accessed via

All Programs>MikTeX>Package Manager

The Package Manager downloads the files from a CTAN mirror of your choice, then installs all files in their correct folders and updates MikTeX's filename database.

It is a good idea to run the MiKTeX Update Wizard on a regular basis to keep your system up to date:

All Programs>MikTeX>MiKTeX Update Wizard

A.2 *LATEX on a Mac*

A.2.1 *Installations*

For the Mac, we install MacTeX,³ which consists of the TUG's TeX Live and Richard Koch's TeXShop. If you have TeX Live (see Section E.2), put the DVD in your computer's DVD drive and follow the simple instructions. In a few minutes you are done. Otherwise, go to

<http://www.tug.org/mactex/>

and in the Downloading section, click on MacTeX-2007. After downloading about 700 MBs, you get the MacTeX-2007 "disk image" that contains the mactex installer package. The disk image should open and the application MacTeX-2007.mpkg should start automatically. A few more clicks—as in all Mac installations—and you are done.

The spelling checker

Finally, get the spell checker cocoAspell by Anton Leuski by going to

<http://people.ict.usc.edu/~leuski/cocoaspell/home.html>

and clicking on the download link, cocoAspell. This downloads the disk image cocoAspell.dmg, containing the installation package cocoAspell.mpkg. Follow the same process as above to mount this. Then double click on the installer package and follow the instructions.

In the Apple menu, choose System Preferences..., where you find a new one, Spelling. Double click on it, and choose a dictionary. I use the dictionary English(United States). You should also select the filters you need. They are explained on the page you obtain by clicking on the Filter button. I selected Texinfo and TeX/LaTeX. You may have to restart the computer for the spelling checker to work.

To invoke the spelling checker, select a word and press Command+Shift and :. It suggests a correct spelling. You can also add words to the dictionary.

To learn more about the dictionaries, read the documents in

</Library/Application Support/cocoAspell/ aspell6-en-6.0-0/doc/>

³We follow the instructions for MacTeX-2007. Hopefully, this will also assist you with later versions.

A.2.2 Working with TeXShop

Custom settings

In due course, you can fully customize TeXShop as an advanced user. But to begin, there are just a few things to do. In the TeXShop menu choose Preferences... to open the TeXShop Preferences. To set the default font for the source files in TeXShop, click on the Document tab. Under Document Font click Set..., which brings up the Font window. Choose a font and size for the source files that is easy on your eyes. I use Courier and 12. Close the Font window.

Make sure that under Editor all items except Auto Complete are selected.

Now click the Preview tab and in the Preview Window Magnification enter a number for the magnification to be used for viewing the typeset version—I use 150. Once you type in the number, press Set. For Default Mouse Mode, choose Select Text. For Default Page Style, choose Multi-Page.

Under After Window Resize, choose Fixed Magnification. Then click on OK. Close the TeXShop Preferences window.

When you become more familiar with TeXShop, you may want to revisit these settings.

Changing a document for TeXShop

If

- you use the `graphicx` package, see `intrart.tex` in the `samples` folder as an example, and
- your document contains illustrations that have been saved as EPS graphics and included with the `\includegraphics` command,

then add the line

```
\usepackage{epstopdf}
```

in the preamble below the line

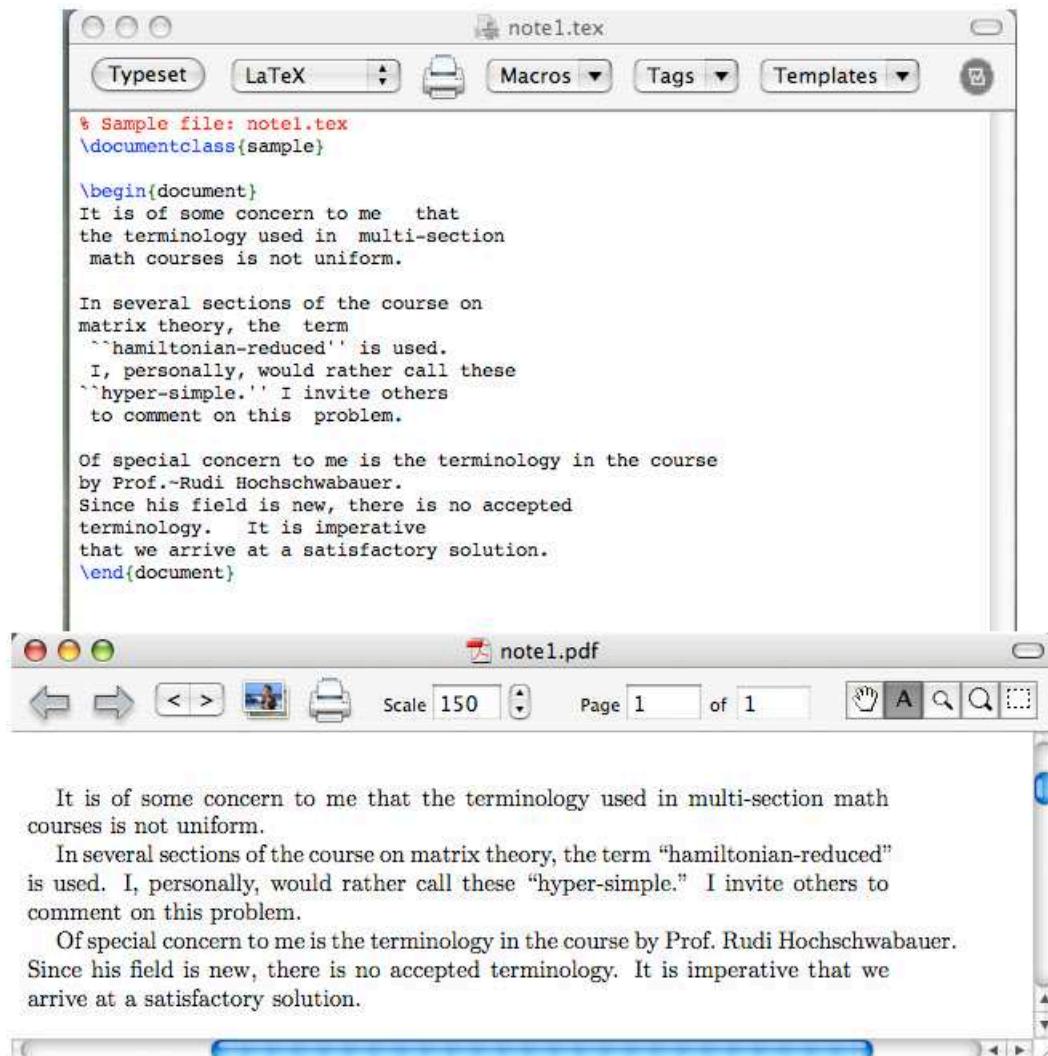
```
\usepackage{graphicx}
```

If you have many illustrations, it is preferable to open all the illustrations with TeXShop or Preview and save them in PDF format. Also, make sure that the extensions are not given in the `\includegraphics` commands, that is,

```
\usepackage{graphicx}
\includegraphics{products.eps}
```

is changed to

```
\usepackage{graphicx}
\includegraphics{products}
```

Figure A.3: The document `note1.tex`: the source and the typeset version.

A.2.3 The editing cycle

In your Document folder, you created the work folder (see page 4). We are going to work with the document `note1.tex` in the work folder.

To start TeXShop, double click on `TeXShop.app` in the Applications folder, select the menu `File>Open...`, and navigate to the folder

`Documents/work/note1.tex`

Open the document.

In the upper left corner of the source window, click the Typeset button. A second window opens, the *preview window*, showing `note1.pdf`, the typeset version of `note1.tex`. Unlike WinEdt, discussed in Section A.1, which produces a file called `note1.dvi`, TeXShop produces a PDF file, `note1.pdf`.

Figure A.3 shows the two windows. At the top, you see TeXShop's seven menus. For this introduction we ignore all but two menu options. You should use the Help menu to learn more and the Macros Help in the Help window along with the Macro Editor (open it with Macros>Open Macro Editor...) to become more productive.

A.2.4 Making a mistake

TeXShop tells you if there is a mistake in your source file. Open `note1.tex` again and introduce a silly error, say, in the line `\documentclass{amsart}`, delete the closing brace, so it reads `\documentclass{amsart`. A new window—the third!—pops up, called `note1 console`, see Figure A.4. This is the log window (see Section 1.3). Click on the button `Goto Error` and the cursor is placed in the source document pretty close to the error. Now you can correct the error and typeset again.

A.2.5 Three productivity tools

Now we see how the three productivity tools introduced in Section 1.4 are implemented in TeXShop.

Synchronization Command-click on a word in the source window. The preview window shows the corresponding typeset phrase circled in red. Similarly, command-click on a word in the preview window and the corresponding source phrase is highlighted in yellow—it helps to click on text with no L^AT_EX commands close by.

Block comment Select a number of lines in a source document, and choose the menu option `Format>Comment`. All the lines, the whole block, are commented out. The reverse is done with `Format>Uncomment`.

Go to line This is done with `Edit>Line Number...`

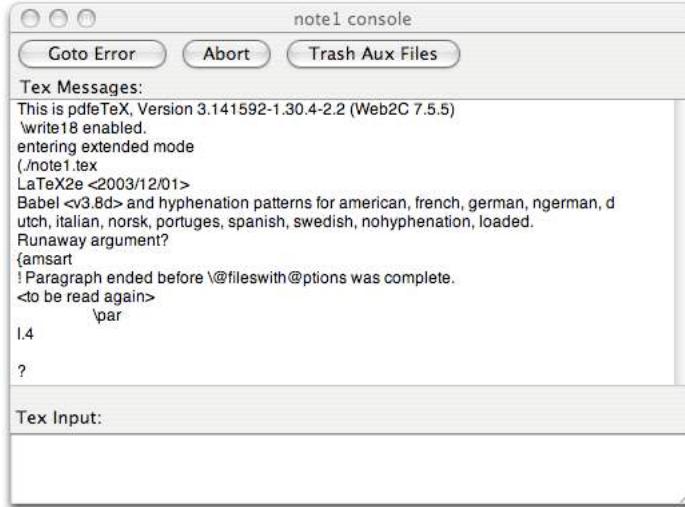


Figure A.4: The `note1.tex` console (log window).

Buttons and menu options all have keyboard equivalents. For instance, Block comment is Command + { and Go to line is Command + L.

A.2.6 *An important folder*

Create the `texmf` folder in the Library folder of your home folder—not the other Library folder, which is in the same folder as Applications. In `texmf`, create the `tex` folder, wherein you create the `latex` folder. Put all your personal (see Section 15.3) and additional `sty` files here.

APPENDIX

B

Math symbol tables

B.1 Hebrew and Greek letters

Hebrew letters

Type	Typeset
\aleph	\aleph
\beth	\beth
\daleth	\daleth
\gimel	\gimel

Greek letters**Lowercase**

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
\alpha	α	\iota	ι	\sigma	σ
\beta	β	\kappa	κ	\tau	τ
\gamma	γ	\lambda	λ	\upsilon	υ
\delta	δ	\mu	μ	\phi	ϕ
\epsilon	ϵ	\nu	ν	\chi	χ
\zeta	ζ	\xi	ξ	\psi	ψ
\eta	η	\pi	π	\omega	ω
\theta	θ	\rho	ρ		
\varepsilon	ε	\varpi	ϖ	\varsigma	ς
\vartheta	ϑ	\varrho	ϱ	\varphi	φ
	\digamma	F		\varkappa	\varkappa

Uppercase

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
\Gamma	Γ	\Xi	Ξ	\Phi	Φ
\Delta	Δ	\Pi	Π	\Psi	Ψ
\Theta	Θ	\Sigma	Σ	\Omega	Ω
\Lambda	Λ	\Upsilon	Υ		
\varGamma	\varGamma	\varXi	\varXi	\varPhi	\varPhi
\varDelta	\varDelta	\varPi	\varPi	\varPsi	\varPsi
\varTheta	\varTheta	\varSigma	\varSigma	\varOmega	\varOmega
\varLambda	\varLambda	\varUpsilon	\varUpsilon		

B.2 Binary relations

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
<	<	>	>
=	=	:	:
\in	∈	\ni or \owns	∋
\leq or \le	≤	\geq or \ge	≥
\ll	≪	\gg	≫
\prec	≺	\succ	≻
\preceq	⊲	\succeq	⊳
\sim	~	\approx	≈
\simeq	≃	\cong	≅
\equiv	≡	\doteq	≡
\subset	⊂	\supset	⊃
\subseteqq	⊆	\supseteqq	⊇
\sqsubset	⊑	\sqsupset	⊒
\sqsubseteqq	⊑	\sqsupseteqq	⊒
\smile	(\frown)
\perp	⊥	\models	⊤
\mid		\parallel	
\vdash	⊢	\dashv	⊦
\proto	∞	\asymp	∼
\bowtie	⋈		
\sqsubset	⊑	\sqsupset	⊒
\Join	⋈		

Note the \colon command used in $f: x \rightarrow x^2$, typed as

```
f \colon x \rightarrow x^2
```

More binary relations

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
\leqq	\leqslant	\geqq	\geqslant
\leqslant	\leqslant	\geqslant	\geqslant
\eqslantless	\eqslantless	\eqslantgtr	\eqslantgtr
\lessim	\lessim	\gtrsim	\gtrsim
\lessapprox	\lessapprox	\gtrapprox	\gtrapprox
\approxeq	\approxeq		
\lessdot	\lessdot	\gtrdot	\gtrdot
\lll	\lll	\ggg	\ggg
\lessgtr	\lessgtr	\gtrless	\gtrless
\lesseqgtr	\lesseqgtr	\gtreqless	\gtreqless
\lesseqqgtr	\lesseqqgtr	\gtreqqless	\gtreqqless
\doteqdot	\doteqdot	\eqcirc	\eqcirc
\circeq	\circeq	\triangleq	\triangleq
\risingdotseq	\risingdotseq	\fallingdotseq	\fallingdotseq
\backsimeq	\backsimeq	\thicksim	\thicksim
\preccurlyeq	\preccurlyeq	\succcurlyeq	\succcurlyeq
\curlyeqprec	\curlyeqprec	\curlyeqsucc	\curlyeqsucc
\precsim	\precsim	\succsim	\succsim
\precapprox	\precapprox	\succapprox	\succapprox
\subseteqq	\subseteqq	\supseteqq	\supseteqq
\Subset	\Subset	\Supset	\Supset
\vartriangleleft	\vartriangleleft	\vartriangleright	\vartriangleright
\trianglelefteq	\trianglelefteq	\trianglerighteq	\trianglerighteq
\vDash	\vDash	\Vdash	\Vdash
\Vvdash	\Vvdash		
\smallsmile	\smallsmile	\smallfrown	\smallfrown
\shortmid	\shortmid	\shortparallel	\shortparallel
\bumpeq	\bumpeq	\Bumpeq	\Bumpeq
\between	\between	\pitchfork	\pitchfork
\varpropto	\varpropto	\backepsilon	\backepsilon
\blacktriangleleft	\blacktriangleleft	\blacktriangleright	\blacktriangleright
\therefore	\therefore	\because	\because

Negated binary relations

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
\neq or \ne	\neq	\notin	\notin
\nless	$\not\lessdot$	\ngtr	$\not\gtrdot$
\nleq	$\not\leq$	\ngeq	$\not\geq$
\nleqslant	$\not\leqslant$	\ngeqslant	$\not\geqslant$
\nleqq	$\not\leqq$	\ngeqq	$\not\geqq$
\lneq	$\not\lhd$	\gneq	$\not\gtrhd$
\lneqq	$\not\lhd\lhd$	\gneqq	$\not\gtrhd\gtrhd$
\lvertneqq	$\not\lvert\lhd\lhd$	\gvertneqq	$\not\lvert\gtrhd\gtrhd$
\lnsim	$\not\approx$	\gnsim	$\not\approx\approx$
\lnapprox	$\not\approx\approx$	\gnapprox	$\approx\approx$
\nprec	$\not\prec$	\nsucc	$\not\succ$
\npreeq	$\not\preceq$	\nsucceq	$\not\succeq$
\precneqq	$\not\prec\neqq$	\succcneqq	$\not\succ\neqq$
\precnsim	$\not\approx$	\succcnsim	$\approx\approx$
\precnapprox	$\not\approx\approx$	\succcnapprox	$\approx\approx$
\nsim	$\not\approx$	\ncong	$\not\cong$
\nshortmid	$\not\mid$	\nshortparallel	$\not\parallel$
\nmid	$\not\mid$	\nparallel	$\not\parallel$
\nvdash	$\not\vdash$	\nvDash	$\not\vdash$
\nVdash	$\not\vdash$	\nVDash	$\not\vdash$
\ntriangleleft	$\not\triangleleft$	\ntriangleright	$\not\triangleleft$
\ntrianglelefteq	$\not\trianglelefteq$	\ntrianglerighteq	$\not\triangleleft\triangleq$
\nsubseteqeq	$\not\subseteq$	\nsupseteq	$\not\supseteq$
\nsubseteqeqq	$\not\subseteq\subseteq$	\nsupseteqq	$\not\supseteq\supseteq$
\subsetneq	$\not\subset$	\supsetneq	$\supset\subset$
\varsubsetneq	$\not\subset$	\varsupsetneq	$\supset\subset$
\subsetneqq	$\not\subset\subset$	\supsetneqq	$\supset\supset\subset$
\varsubsetneqq	$\not\subset\subset$	\varsupsetneqq	$\supset\supset\supset\subset$

B.3 Binary operations

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
+	+	-	-
\pm	\pm	\mp	\mp
\times	\times	\cdot	.
\circ	\circ	\bigcirc	\bigcirc
\div	\div	\bmod	mod
\cap	\cap	\cup	\cup
\sqcap	\sqcap	\sqcup	\sqcup
\wedge or \land	\wedge	\vee or \lor	\vee
\triangleleft	\triangleleft	\triangleright	\triangleright
\bigtriangleup	\bigtriangleup	\bigtriangledown	\bigtriangledown
\oplus	\oplus	\ominus	\ominus
\otimes	\otimes	\oslash	\oslash
\odot	\odot	\bullet	\bullet
\dagger	\dagger	\ddagger	\ddagger
\setminus	\setminus	\smallsetminus	\smallsetminus
\wr	\wr	\amalg	\amalg
\ast	\ast	\star	\star
\diamond	\diamond		
\lhd	\lhd	\rhd	\rhd
\unlhd	\unlhd	\unrhd	\unrhd
\dotplus	\dotplus	\centerdot	.
\ltimes	\ltimes	\rtimes	\rtimes
\leftthreetimes	\leftthreetimes	\rightthreetimes	\rightthreetimes
\circleddash	\circleddash	\uplus	\uplus
\barwedge	\barwedge	\doublebarwedge	\doublebarwedge
\curlywedge	\curlywedge	\curlyvee	\curlyvee
\veebar	\veebar	\intercal	\intercal
\doublecap or \Cap	\doublecap or \Cap	\doublecup or \Cup	\doublecup or \Cup
\circledast	\circledast	\circledcirc	\circledcirc
\boxminus	\boxminus	\boxtimes	\boxtimes
\boxdot	\boxdot	\boxplus	\boxplus
\divideontimes	\divideontimes	\vartriangle	\vartriangle
\And	\And		

B.4 Arrows

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
\leftarrow	\leftarrow	\rightarrow or \to	\rightarrow
\longleftarrow	\longleftarrow	\longrightarrow	\longrightarrow
\Leftarrow	\Leftarrow	\Rightarrow	\Rightarrow
\Longleftarrow	\Longleftarrow	\Longrightarrow	\Longrightarrow
\leftrightarrow	\leftrightarrow	\longleftrightarrow	\longleftrightarrow
\Leftrightarrow	\Leftrightarrow	\Longleftrightarrow	\Longleftrightarrow
\uparrow	\uparrow	\downarrow	\downarrow
\Uparrow	\Uparrow	\Downarrow	\Downarrow
\updownarrow	\updownarrow	\Updownarrow	\Updownarrow
\nearrow	\nearrow	\searrow	\searrow
\swarrow	\swarrow	\nwarrow	\nwarrow
\iff	\iff	\mapstochar	\mapstochar
\mapsto	\mapsto	\longmapsto	\longmapsto
\hookleftarrow	\hookleftarrow	\hookrightarrow	\hookrightarrow
\leftharpoonup	\leftharpoonup	\rightharpoonup	\rightharpoonup
\leftharpoondown	\leftharpoondown	\rightharpoondown	\rightharpoondown
\leadsto	\leadsto		
\leftleftarrows	\leftleftarrows	\rightrightarrows	\rightrightarrows
\leftrightarrows	\leftrightarrows	\rightleftarrows	\rightleftarrows
\Lleftarrow	\Lleftarrow	\Rrightarrow	\Rrightarrow
\twoheadleftarrow	\twoheadleftarrow	\twoheadrightarrow	\twoheadrightarrow
\leftarrowtail	\leftarrowtail	\rightarrowtail	\rightarrowtail
\looparrowleft	\looparrowleft	\looparrowright	\looparrowright
\upuparrows	\upuparrows	\downdownarrows	\downdownarrows
\upharpoonleft	\upharpoonleft	\upharpoonright	\upharpoonright
\downharpoonleft	\downharpoonleft	\downharpoonright	\downharpoonright
\leftrightsquigarrow	\leftrightsquigarrow	\rightsquigarrow	\rightsquigarrow
\multimap	\multimap		
\nleftarrow	\nleftarrow	\nrightarrow	\nrightarrow
\nLeftarrow	\nLeftarrow	\nRightarrow	\nRightarrow
\nleftrightarrow	\nleftrightarrow	\nLeftrightarrow	\nLeftrightarrow
\dashleftarrow	\dashleftarrow	\dashrightarrow	\dashrightarrow
\curvearrowleft	\curvearrowleft	\curvearrowright	\curvearrowright
\circlearrowleft	\circlearrowleft	\circlearrowright	\circlearrowright
\leftrightharpoons	\leftrightharpoons	\rightleftharpoons	\rightleftharpoons
\Lsh	\Lsh	\Rsh	\Rsh

B.5 Miscellaneous symbols

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
\hbar	\hbar	\ell	ℓ
\imath	\imath	\jmath	\jmath
\wp	\wp	\partial	∂
\Im	\Im	\Re	\Re
\infty	∞	\prime	$'$
\emptyset	\emptyset	\varnothing	\emptyset
\forall	\forall	\exists	\exists
\smallint	\smallint	\triangle	\triangle
\top	\top	\bot	\bot
\P	\P	\S	\S
\dag	\dag	\ddag	\ddag
\flat	\flat	\natural	\natural
\sharp	\sharp	\angle	\angle
\clubsuit	\clubsuit	\diamondsuit	\diamondsuit
\heartsuit	\heartsuit	\spadesuit	\spadesuit
\surd	\surd	\nabla	∇
\pounds	\pounds	\neg or \lnot	\neg
\Box	\Box	\Diamond	\Diamond
\mho	\mho		
\hslash	\hslash	\complement	\complement
\backprime	\backprime	\nexists	\nexists
\Bbbk	\Bbbk		
\diagup	\diagup	\diagdown	\diagdown
\blacktriangle	\blacktriangle	\blacktriangledown	\blacktriangledown
\triangledown	\triangledown	\eth	\eth
\square	\square	\blacksquare	\blacksquare
\lozenge	\lozenge	\blacklozenge	\blacklozenge
\measuredangle	\measuredangle	\sphericalangle	\sphericalangle
\circledS	\circledS	\bigstar	\bigstar
\Finv	\Finv	\Game	\Game

B.6 Delimiters

Name	Type	Typeset
left parenthesis	((
right parenthesis))
left bracket	[or \lbrack	[
right bracket] or \rbrack]
left brace	\{ or \lbrace	{
right brace	\} or \rbrace	}
backslash	\backslash	\
forward slash	/	/
left angle bracket	\langle	<
right angle bracket	\rangle	>
vertical line	or \vert	
double vertical line	\ or \Vert	
left floor	\lfloor	[
right floor	\rfloor]
left ceiling	\lceil	[
right ceiling	\rceil]
upward	\uparrow	↑
double upward	\Uparrow	↑↑
downward	\downarrow	↓
double downward	\Downarrow	↓↓
up-and-down	\updownarrow	↑↓
double up-and-down	\Updownarrow	↑↑↓↓
upper-left corner	\ulcorner	⌜
upper-right corner	\urcorner	⌞
lower-left corner	\llcorner	⌜
lower-right corner	\lrcorner	⌞⌜

B.7 Operators

“Pure” operators, with no limits

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
\arccos	arccos	\cot	cot	\hom	hom	\sin	sin
\arcsin	arcsin	\coth	coth	\ker	ker	\sinh	sinh
\arctan	arctan	\csc	csc	\lg	lg	\tan	tan
\arg	arg	\deg	deg	\ln	ln	\tanh	tanh
\cos	cos	\dim	dim	\log	log		
\cosh	cosh	\exp	exp	\sec	sec		

Operators with limits

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
\det	det	\limsup	lim sup
\gcd	gcd	\max	max
\inf	inf	\min	min
\lim	lim	\Pr	Pr
\liminf	lim inf	\sup	sup
\injlim	inj lim	\projlim	proj lim
\varliminf	<u>lim</u>	\varlimsup	<u>lim</u>
\varinjlim	\varinjlim	\varprojlim	\varprojlim

B.7.1 Large operators

Type	Inline	Displayed
<code>\int_{a}^{b}</code>	\int_a^b	\int_a^b
<code>\oint_{a}^{b}</code>	\oint_a^b	\oint_a^b
<code>\iint_{a}^{b}</code>	\iint_a^b	\iint_a^b
<code>\iiint_{a}^{b}</code>	\iiint_a^b	\iiint_a^b
<code>\iiiiint_{a}^{b}</code>	\iiiiint_a^b	\iiiiint_a^b
<code>\idotsint_{a}^{b}</code>	$\int \cdots \int_a^b$	$\int \cdots \int_a^b$
<code>\prod_{i=1}^n</code>	$\prod_{i=1}^n$	$\prod_{i=1}^n$
<code>\coprod_{i=1}^n</code>	$\coprod_{i=1}^n$	$\coprod_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigcap_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigcap_{i=1}^n$	$\bigcap_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigcup_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigcup_{i=1}^n$	$\bigcup_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigwedge_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigwedge_{i=1}^n$	$\bigwedge_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigvee_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigvee_{i=1}^n$	$\bigvee_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigsqcup_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigsqcup_{i=1}^n$	$\bigsqcup_{i=1}^n$
<code>\biguplus_{i=1}^n</code>	$\biguplus_{i=1}^n$	$\biguplus_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigotimes_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigotimes_{i=1}^n$	$\bigotimes_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigoplus_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigoplus_{i=1}^n$	$\bigoplus_{i=1}^n$
<code>\bigodot_{i=1}^n</code>	$\bigodot_{i=1}^n$	$\bigodot_{i=1}^n$
<code>\sum_{i=1}^n</code>	$\sum_{i=1}^n$	$\sum_{i=1}^n$

B.8 Math accents and fonts

Math accents

Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
\acute{a}	á		
\bar{a}	ā		
\breve{a}	ă	\spbreve	˘
\check{a}	ă	\spcheck	ˇ
\dot{a}	ȧ	\spdot	˙
\ddot{a}	ä	\spddot	‥
\dddot{a}	ẅ	\spdddot	…
\ddddot{a}	ẅẅẅ		
\grave{a}	à		
\hat{a}	â		
\widehat{a}	â	\sphat	~
\mathring{a}	å		
\tilde{a}	ã		
\widetilde{a}	ã	\sptilde	~
\vec{a}	ã		

Math fonts

Type	Typeset
\texttt{LATEX}	
\texttt{\mathbf{A}}	A
\texttt{\mathcal{A}}	\mathcal{A}
\texttt{\mathit{A}}	A
\texttt{\mathnormal{A}}	A
\texttt{\mathrm{A}}	A
\texttt{\mathsf{A}}	A
\texttt{\mathit{A}}	A
\texttt{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}	α
\texttt{\mathbb{A}}	\mathbb{A}
\texttt{\mathfrak{A}}	\mathfrak{A}
\texttt{\mathscr{A}}	\mathcal{A}

\mathscr requires the eucal package with the `mathscr` option

B.9 Math spacing commands

Name	Width	Short	Long
1 mu (math unit)		\mspace{1mu}	
thinspace		\,	\thinspace
medspace		\:	\medspace
thickspace		\;	\thickspace
interword space		\triangleleft	
1 em			\quad
2 em			\quad\quad
Negative space			
1 mu			\mspace{-1mu}
thinspace		\!	\negthinspace
medspace			\negmedspace
thickspace			\negthickspace

APPENDIX**C**

*Text symbol tables***C.1 Some European characters**

Name	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
a-ring	\aa	å	\AA	Å
aesc	\ae	æ	\AE	Æ
ethel	\oe	œ	\OE	Œ
eszett	\ss	ß	\SS	SS
inverted question mark	?‘	¿		
inverted exclamation mark	!‘	¡		
slashed L	\l	ł	\L	Ł
slashed O	\o	ø	\O	Ø

C.2 Text accents

Name	Type	Typeset	Name	Type	Typeset
acute	\'{o}	ó	macron	\={o}	ö
breve	\u{o}	ő	overdot	\.{g}	gó
caron/haček	\v{o}	ő	ring	\r{u}	ü
cedilla	\c{c}	ç	tie	\t{oo}	öö
circumflex	\^{o}	ô	tilde	\~{n}	ñ
dieresis/umlaut	\"u	ü	underdot	\d{m}	ṁ
double acute	\H{o}	ő	underbar	\b{o}	ő
grave	\`{o}	ò			
dotless i	\i	í	dotless j	\j	í
	\'{\i}	í		\v{\j}	í

C.3 Text font commands

C.3.1 Text font family commands

Command with Argument	Command Declaration	Switches to the font family
\textnormal{...}	{\normalfont ...}	document
\emph{...}	{\em ...}	<i>emphasis</i>
\textrm{...}	{\rmfamily ...}	roman
\textsf{...}	{\sffamily ...}	sans serif
\texttt{...}	{\ttfamily ...}	typewriter style
\textup{...}	{\upshape ...}	upright shape
\textit{...}	{\itshape ...}	<i>italic shape</i>
\textsl{...}	{\slshape ...}	<i>slanted shape</i>
\textsc{...}	{\scshape ...}	SMALL CAPITALS
\textbf{...}	{\bfseries ...}	bold
\textmd{...}	{\mdseries ...}	normal weight and width

C.3.2 Text font size changes

Command	L <small>A</small> T <small>E</small> X sample text	AMS sample text
\Tiny	[not available]	sample text
\tiny	sample text	sample text
\SMALL or \scriptsize	sample text	sample text
\Small or \footnotesize	sample text	sample text
\small	sample text	sample text
\normalsize	sample text	sample text
\large	sample text	sample text
\Large	sample text	sample text
\LARGE	sample text	sample text
\huge	sample text	sample text
\Huge	sample text	sample text

C.4 Additional text symbols

Name	Type	Typeset
ampersand	\&	&
asterisk bullet	\textasteriskcentered	*
backslash	\textbackslash	\
bar (caesura)	\textbar	
brace left	\{	{
brace right	\}	}
bullet	\textbullet	•
circled a	\textcircled{a}	Ⓐ
circumflex	\textasciicircum	^
copyright	\copyright	©
dagger	\dag	†
double dagger (diesis)	\ddag	‡
dollar	\\$	\$
double quotation left	\textquotedblleft or ``	“
double quotation right	\textquotedblright or ''	”
em dash	\textemdash or ---	—
en dash	\textendash or --	–
exclamation down	\textexclamdown or !‘	¡
greater than	\textgreater	>
less than	\textless	<
lowline	_	-
midpoint	\textperiodcentered	.
octothorp	\#	#
percent	\%	%
pilcrow (paragraph)	\P	¶
question down	\textquestiondown or ?‘	¿
registered trademark	\textregistered	®
section	\S	§

Additional text symbols, *continued*

Name	Type	Typeset
single quote left	\textquotleft or ‘	‘
single quote right	\textquotright or ’	’
sterling	\pounds	£
superscript	a	^a
tilde	\textasciitilde	~
trademark	\texttrademark	TM
visible space	\textvisiblespace	„

For the \textsubscript command, see Section 12.3.

C.5 Additional text symbols with T1 encoding**An accent**

Name	Type	Typeset
Ogonek	\k{e}	é

European characters

Name	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
Eth	\dh	ð	\DH	Ð
Dyet	\dj	đ	\DJ	Đ
Eng	\ng	ŋ	\NG	Ŋ
Thorn	\th	þ	\TH	Þ

Quotation marks

Name	Type	Typeset	Type	Typeset
Single Guillemet	\guilsinglleft	⟨	\guilsinglright	⟩
Double Guillemet	\guillemotleft	«	\guillemotright	»
Single Quotation	\quotesinglbase	,	\textquotright	’
Double Quotation	\quotedblbase	„	\textquotedbl	”

C.6 Text spacing commands

Name	Width	Short command	Long command
Positive Space			
Normal	varies	\kern 0pt 	
Intersentence	varies	$\text{\@.}\text{\kern 0pt }$	
Interword	varies	\kern 1pt 	
Italic Corr.	varies	\kern 1.5pt 	
Tie	varies	\kern 1.5pt 	
Thinspace	\kern 1pt 	\kern 1pt 	<code>\thinspace</code>
Medspace	\kern 1pt 	\kern 1.5pt 	<code>\medspace</code>
Thickspace	\kern 1pt 	\kern 2pt 	<code>\thickspace</code>
1 em	\kern 1.5pt 		<code>\quad</code>
2 em	\kern 3pt 		<code>\quad\quad</code>
Negative Space			
Thinspace	\kern -1pt 	\kern -1pt 	<code>\negthinspace</code>
Medspace	\kern -1pt 		<code>\negmedspace</code>
Thickspace	\kern -1pt 		<code>\negthickspace</code>

Index

Italic numbers indicate figures or tables, **bold** numbers indicate definitions.
Special symbols are placed at the end of the Index.

- A**
- `a4paper` (doc. class opt.), 298, 306
 - `a5paper` (doc. class opt.), 306
 - `\AA` (Å), *81, 515*
 - `\aa` (å), *81, 515*
 - abbreviations
 - in bibliographic entries, 436–437
 - defining, 436
 - periods in, 66–67
 - using small caps for, 91, 480
 - using ties (~) with, 66
 - Abrahams, Paul W., 553, 557
 - absolute
 - names for equations, 201
 - units, 12, 15, 89, 93, 95, 96, 105, 107, 111, 308, 403
 - `abstract` (text env.), *36, 68, 251, 285*
 - in `beamer` document class, 326
 - in `report` document class, 303
 - placement of, 251, 285
 - `abstract` (bibl. com.), 425
 - `\abstractname` (redef. name), 375
 - abstracts, *36, 251, 326*
 - in AMS document classes, 285
 - in presentations, 53–55
 - in `report` document class, 303
 - separate page for, 249, 299
 - accents
 - European, 15, *79–80, 519*
 - hyphenation of words with, 82
 - in bibliographies, 427
 - in `hyperref` titles, 322
 - math, **25, 176–178**, 183, 185, 301, 377, 483
 - double, **177**
 - text, 9, 15, 69, 79, **79–80, 516, 519**
 - `accents` (pack.), 178
 - acronyms, using small caps for, 91, 480
 - acute (‘ acute text accent), *79, 516*
 - `\acute{e}` (acute math accent), *177, 512*
 - `\addcontentsline` (table of contents com.)
 - and lists of figures and tables, 476
 - arguments of, 473, 476
 - adding lines
 - to lists of figures and tables, 476
 - to tables of contents, 473–474
 - addition, 22, 63, 157
 - `\address` (top matter com.), 54, 296, 326
 - in letters, 309
 - optional arguments of, 277
 - rules for using, 277
 - with multiple authors, 281
 - `address` (BIBTEX database field), 424, 425
 - addresses
 - in letters, 309
 - of authors in articles, 44, 277, 281, 296
 - `\addtocontents` (table of contents com.)
 - and lists of figures and tables, 476
 - arguments of, 474, 476
 - `\addtocounter` (counter incr. com.), 402
 - `\addtolength` (counter setting com.), 405
 - adjusted
 - columns, 210, **231–242**
 - formulas, 210, **231–242**
 - flush left and right, 214

- adjusting
 interline spacing, 95, 98–99
 placement of root with `\sqrt`, 162
- Adobe
 Acrobat Professional, 318, 319, 321, 325, 483
 converting from Postscript to PDF, 319
 placing hyperlinks in documents, 319
- Portable Document Format (PDF), *see under* PDF
- PostScript (PS), *see* PS
- Reader, 53, 321, 325, 358, 486
- Adobe Systems, 317–319, 557
- `\AE` Aesc (\mathcal{A}), 81, 515
- `\ae` aesc (\mathfrak{a}), 81, 515
- `\afterpage` (delay com.), 312
- `\afterpage` (pack.), 312
- afterwords, of books, 467
- `\aleph` (\aleph_0 Hebrew char.), 501
- `\alert` (beamer text style com.), 337
- `\align` (math align. env.), 30–31, 33, 208, 209, 210, 219–224, 230, 483, 524
 annotated, 209
 page breaks in, 242
- `\align*` (math align. env.), 31, 221, 226
- `\alignat` (math align. env.), 208, 210, 224–226
 argument of, 226
- `\aligned`
 formulas, 30–32, 207–211, 219–226, 230–232, 242, 298, 524
 text in, 226–227
- math environments, 242
 `\align`, 30–32, 208, 210, 219–224, 230, 242
 `\alignat`, 208, 210, 224–226
 and `\verb` commands, 148
 `\eqnarray`, 222
 `\flalign`, 208, 210, 221
 inserting lines of text in, 226
 intercolumn space in, 209
 subsidiary math environments, 227–231
 `\aligned`, 211, 227–230
 `\alignedat`, 227–230
 `\split`, 208, 211, 230–231, 298
- `\aligned` (subsid. math align. env.), 211, 227–230
 and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 243
- `\alignedat` (subsid. math align. env.), 227–230
 and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 243
- alignment
 of columns in `tabular` environments, 135, 136, 313
- of formulas, *see also under* adjusted, 219–231
 annotated, 32, 209
 commands for, 214
 flush left and right, 209
 multiline, 30–33, 217–219
 simple, 31, 30–31
 of large symbols, 229–230
 of text, 8, 68, 106, 124, 134, 227, 407
 centering, 8, 14, 54, 124, 124, 134, 137, 227, 327, 414
 command declarations for, 124, 137
 flush left, 8, 14, 124
 flush right, 8, 14, 106, 124
 with `trivlist` environments, 414
- of text boxes, vertical, 111
- point
 for annotations (`&&`), 32
 for subformulas (`&`), 30, 31, 33, 216, 218, 221
 within text boxes, 107, 111
- `\allowdisplaybreaks` (display break com.), 242
 and subsidiary math environments, 243
 optional argument of, 243
- `\alltt` (disp. text env.), 159, 311
- `\alltt` (pack.), 147, 311, 534
- `\Alpha` (uppercase letter counter style com.), 401
- `\alpha` (lowercase letter counter style com.), 401
- `\alpha` (α Greek char.), 502
- `\alpha` (BIBTEX style), 428
- alphabets (counter styles), 401
- alphabets, math, 196, 195–196
 blackboard bold, 181, 197, 390, 512
 calligraphic, 185, 197, 301, 390, 512
 Euler Fraktur, 180, 182, 197, 301, 302, 390, 512
 Euler Script, 301, 302, 390, 512
 Greek, 197
 symbol, 197–199
 alphanumeric keys, 8–9
- `\amalg` (\amalg II math op.), 506
- American Standard Code for Information Interchange, *see* ASCII
- ampersand (`&`)
 as alignment point
 for annotations, 32, 33
 for subformulas, 30, 31, 216, 218, 221
- as column separator, 25, 135, 220, 221
 text symbol, 77, 81, 518
- AMS (American Mathematical Society), xxix, 525, 543
- AMSFONTs, *see* AMSFONTs
- article templates, 294–297
- bibliographies

- database files, 437
- fields, 425
- sample files, 437, **437–438**
- styles, **266**, **421**, 421, 426, 437–438
- distribution, 271, **300–302**, 380, 436, 437, 521, 528, 553
- document classes, *see* document classes
- environments, *see* displayed math environments, subsidiary math environments, *and* text environments
- front matter, *see* front matter
- packages, *see* packages
- sample files, *see under* sample files
- subject classifications, 279
- technical support provided by, 542
- top matter, *see also under* top matter
 - AMS specific information, 279–281
 - article information, 273–275
 - author information, 275–279
 - commands, **273–285**, 296
 - examples of, 282–285
 - rules for, 275–279
 - with multiple authors, 281
- Web site, 280, 542
- \AmS** (*AmS logo com.*), 80
- AMS package distribution, 271, **300–302**, 325, 380, 417, 436, 437, 521, 528, 553
- AmS-L^AT_EX*, 523, 524
 - history of, 521–525
 - version 1.0, 524
 - version 1.1, 524
 - two-letter font commands, **94**
 - version 1.2, 524
 - version 2.0, 524
- AmS-T_EX*, **522**, 524
 - history of, 521–525
- amsalpha** (BBTEX style), 428
- amsart** (doc. class), 36, 82, 125, 249–251, 254, **271–302**, 465, 469, 525, 529, 536
 - and numbered lists, 118
 - front matter of, 285
 - sample article, 125, 129, 131, 230, 266, 273, **285–293**, 294, 371, 376, 383, **392–398**, 421, 437, **437–443**, 535, 536
 - top matter of, 251
 - amsart.tpl** (sample file), 294
- amsbook** (doc. class), xxxii, 253, 376, 465, **466–473**, 525, 529
 - for exercises, 476
- amsbsy** (pack.), 301, 302, 528
- amscd** (pack.), 301
- AMSFonts, 300, **301–302**, 525, 528
 - document class options for, 300
- PostScript versions of, 300, 301, 524, 525, 533
- technical support for, 542
- updates to, 533
- amsfonts** (pack.), **301–302**, 528
 - options, 301
- amsgen** (pack.), 301, 302
- amslatex** (LATEX distr. directory), 311, 312, 540
- amsmath** (pack.), xxvi, 53, 231, **300**, 301, 302, 403, 524, 525, 528, 533
 - document class options affecting, 299
 - options, 299
- amsmath.sty** (AMS distr. file), 387
- amsidx** (pack.), 302
- \AMSSname** (*hyperref* redef. name), 323
- amsopn** (pack.), 301, 302
- amsplain** (BBTEX style), 421, 437, 439, 441
- amsplain bst** (BBTEX style file), **421**, 421, 426, 437, 439, 446
- amsproc** (doc. class), 273, 376, 529
- amsproc.template** (AMS sample template file), 297
- amsrefs**, 447
 - creating typeset bibliography, 447
- amssymb** (pack.), 37, 180, 294, 300, 301, 374, 528
- amstext** (pack.), 301, 302
- amsthm** (pack.), 302, 525
- amsxtra** (pack.), 176, 177, 300, 301
- \And** (& math op.), 506
- \and**, top matter command, 304, 306
- and**, in bibliographies, 426
- \angle** (\angle math sym.), 508
- annotations
 - alignment of, 32, 32
 - alignment point for ($\&\&$), 32
 - of formulas, 225
- apalike** (pack.), 437
- apostrophe ('), 11, 62
 - key, 23, 194
- appendices, 255, 467
 - numbering of, 255, 467
- \appendix** (struct. com.), 255, 467
- \appendixname** (redef. name), 376
 - and *hyperref* package, 323
- \approx** (\approx binary rel.), 503
- \approxeq** (\approxeq binary rel.), 504
- \arabic** (numeric counter style com.), 401, 401, 411
- \arccos** (arccos math op.), 172, 510
- \arcsin** (arcsin math op.), 172, 510
- \arctan** (arctan math op.), 172, 510
- \arg** (arg math op.), 172, 510

- arguments
 and tokens, 529
 empty ({}), 39, 55, 70, 159, 179, 188, 189,
 194, 204, 279, 309
 errors in, *see* error messages
 long, **73**
 movable, 74, 475
 negative, 102, 162
 of commands, *see also under* specific
 commands, 327, 335, 349, 350, 355
 of commutative diagram symbols, 240
 of environments, *see also under* specific
 environments
 of top matter commands, *see also top*
 matter, 272, 273, 279, 281, 284
 of user-defined commands, 370–373
 multiple, 370, 371
 optional, 374
 short, 373–374
 of user-defined environments
 optional, 380, 382, 384
 short, 385
 optional, 15, 71, 98, 100, 112, 113, 115,
 125, 162, 179, 233, 242, 250
 multiple, 70
 of commands, 120, 122, 123, 127, 200,
 201, 264, 266, 276–279, 348, 400,
 402, 407, 409, 410, 414, 475
 of environments, **69**, 125, 128, 132, 135,
 229, 243, 260, 384, 486
 of sectioning commands, 253, 473
 of structural commands, 255, 466
 of top matter commands, 273–281
 use square brackets ([]), 15, 27, **69–70**,
 123, 132, 135, 285
 required, 111, 112, 179, 194, 272, 273, 535
 multiple, 19, 70, 137, 192, 194, 268,
 311, 379, 404–406
 of commands, 19, **69**, 137, 192, 194,
 257, 268, 280, 404, 473, 478, **516**
 of environments, **69**, 135, 136, 224, 226,
 236, 237, 263–264, 266, 309,
383–385, 476
 use braces ({}), 8, 14, 19, **69**, 70, 530
 short, **73**
 single character, 69
 spacing within, 19, 85, 107, 154, 163, 181,
 192, 462
 specifying zero in, 114
 arithmetic
 operations, 22–23, 157–159
 with counters, 312, **402–403**
 with length commands, 312, **405**
array (subsid. math env.), 208, 210, 229, 232,
236–238, 312, 313, 523, 551, 552
 arguments of, 236, 237
array (pack.), 312
 arrays, 25–26, 236–238
\arraystretch (table com.), 139
 adjusting vertical spacing with, 139
 arrow keys, 53
 arrows, math, 179, 187, 240, 507
 as delimiters, 167, **168**, 509
ARTICLE (bibl. entry type), 424, 428
article (doc. class), 249, 251, 273, 302, 303,
303–308, 376, 525, 529
 anatomy of, 35–43
 bibliographies in, 263, 265
 sectioning commands provided by, 254
 articles
 bibliographic entries in, **40–41**
 bibliographies in, 47–48, **261–267**, 423,
436, **437–438**, 446
 creating templates for, 44–45, 294–297
 in BIBTEX database files, 428–429, 436
 sectioning of, 46, **252–255**
 top matter information, 44–46
 AMS specific, 273–285
 AMS subject classifications, 279
 author addresses, 44, 277, 281, 296
 author names, 46, 276, 296
 contributor, 276
 current addresses, 277, 281
 dedications, 275
 e-mail addresses, 278, 281, 296
 Internet addresses, 278, 281, 296
 keywords, 280, 297
 research support, 44, 279, 281, 296, 304
 title, 44, 273, 297
ASCII (American Standard Code for Information
 Interchange), *see also* plain text, 9
\ast (* math op.), **506**
asterisk (* text symbol), **81**, **518**
\asymp (\asymp binary rel.), **503**
at sign (@)
 in BIBTEX database (bib) files, 424
 in \index commands, 455, 456
\author (top matter com.), 37, 54, 249, 304,
 306, 331, 469
 multiple authors in, 46, 304
 optional arguments of, 276, 331
author (BIBTEX database field), 424
 authors
 information about, 46
 in AMS top matter, 275–279, 281
 multiple, 46
 in AMS documents, 281
 in bibliographies, 426
 in documents, 304

- names of
 - in articles, 46, 276, 296
 - in running heads, 276
- automatic
 - loading of packages, 53
 - numbering, 28, 30, 37, 46, 119, 125, 231, 252
 - renumbering, 28, 536
 - \autoref (hyperref cross-ref. com.), 320, 320, 322
 - names supported by, 323
- aux (aux. files), 440–443, 474, 487, **526**
 - symbolic references recorded in, 531
- auxiliary files, 475, 486, *see also aux, bbl, bib, blg, bst, glo, idx, ilg, ind, lof, log, lot, out, and toc*, 531
 - names of, 531
 - polishing, 486–487
- B**
 - \b (underscore text accent), 79, **516**
 - b5paper (doc. class opt.), 306
 - babel (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 311
 - babel (pack.), 312, 547–548
 - options, 548
 - babybeamer1.pdf (sample file), 333–335
 - babybeamer2.tex (sample file), 334
 - babybeamer3.tex (sample file), 338
 - babybeamer4.tex (sample file), 343
 - babybeamer5.tex (sample file), 341
 - babybeamer6.tex (sample file), 343
 - babybeamer6block.tex (sample file), 343
 - babybeamer7.tex (sample file), 343, 345–347
 - babybeamer8.tex (sample file), 347
 - babybeamer9.tex (sample file), 349
 - babybeamer10.tex (sample file), 359
 - back matter, 249, **261–268**, 467
 - bibliographies in, 249
 - index in, 450
 - numbering of chapters in, 467
 - \backepsilon (⊸ binary rel.), 504
 - \backmatter (struct. com.), 467
 - \backprime (⊸ math sym.), 508
 - backref (pack.), 320
 - backref (opt. of hyperref pack.), 321
 - \backsimeq (⊼ binary rel.), 504
 - \backsimeq (⊼= binary rel.), 504
 - \backslash (\\ math delimiter), 167, **509**
 - backslash (\\ text symbol), 81, **518**
 - badness, 530
 - balancing
 - braces, 72, 77
 - errors with, 72–73
 - in \index commands, 462
 - inline math delimiters, 153
 - math delimiters, 168, 217
 - \bar (x̄ math accent), 25, 177, 177, 185, **512**
 - bar, vertical (| text symbol), 81, **518**
 - \barwedge (¬̄ math sym.), 506
 - base (L^AT_EX distr. directory), **310**, 311, 540
 - packages in, 310
 - base names (of files), 531
 - baseline, of text, 95, 108
 - adjusting with setspace, 99
 - \baselineskip (length com.), **95**, 101
 - \baselinestretch (length com.), 99
 - \Bbbk (k̄ math sym.), 508
 - \bbl (proc. bibl. files), **441**, 443, 446, 447
 - beamer (doc. class), *see also under*
 - presentations, 325–359
 - abstracts in, 326
 - color in, 348
 - commands
 - \beamergotobutton, 344
 - \breakhere, 351
 - \color, 339, 349
 - \colorbox, 349
 - \fcolorbox, 349
 - \frametitle, 327, 328, 344
 - \hyperlink, 344
 - \institute, 326
 - \note, 355
 - \only, 333–335, **337–339**, 343
 - \onslide, 333, 335, **337–339**, 342, 343
 - \pause, 333, **333**, 334, 337
 - \setbeamercolor, 350
 - \setbeamertemplate, 355
 - \tableofcontents, 328
 - \textcolor, 349
 - \usecolortheme, 357
 - \usefonttheme, 357
 - \usetitle, 328, 356
 - documentation for, 325, 358
 - installation of, 326
 - options
 - handout, 358
 - notes=only, 355
 - notes=show, 355
 - trans, 355, 358
 - xcolor=dvipsnam, 349
 - preamble in, 326–327
 - sections in, 328
 - sidebars, 331
 - sidebars in, 328
 - table of contents in, 328
 - themes, 328, **356–357**
 - top matter in, 326–327
 - \beamergotobutton (beamer com.), 344
 - beamerstructure.tex (sample file), 352, 354
 - \because (∴ binary rel.), 504
 - \begin (start of env.), 67, **68**, 72
 - Berkeley (beamer theme), 328, 331, 332, 356

- Berry, Karl, 544, 553, 557
 font-naming scheme, 544
 $\backslash\beta$ (β Greek char.), 502
 $\backslash\beth$ (\beth Hebrew char.), 501
 $\backslash\between$ (\between binary rel.), 504
 Bezos, Javier, 178, 523
 $\backslash\bf$ (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 94, 95
 $\backslash\bfseries$ (font weight com. dec.), 71, 73, 90, 93, 94, 95, 123, 516
 $\backslash\bfseries$ (font weight env.), 123
 $\backslash\bi$ (BIB_TE_X database files), 421, 423–437, 440
 accents in, 427
 AMS, 436, 437–438
 commas (,) in, 424, 425, 445
 comments in, 443
 cross-referencing within, 432–433
 delimited with parentheses (()), 424
 delimiters in, 424
 double quote ("") in, 424, 445, 446
 en dashes (–) in, 427
 entries
 abbreviations in, 436–437
 capitalization in, 427
 Jr. in, 426
 multiple authors in, 426
 von in, 426
 entry types, 423–437
 case-sensitivity of, 425
 start with @, 424
 equals signs (=) in, 424
 fields in, 425, 431–434, 436
 adding your own, 425
 case-sensitivity of, 425
 optional, 425, 428–436
 required, 425, 428–436
 rules for typing, 426–437
 termination of, 445
 used by AMS bibliography styles, 425
 location of, 439
 number ranges in, 427
 numbers in, 424
 periods (.) in, 426
 portability of, 426
 samples of, 423, 437, 446
 ties (unbreakable spaces) in, 427
 $\backslash\bibcite$ (aux. file com.), 443, 531
 $\backslash\bibdata$ (aux. file com.), 441
 $\backslash\bibitem$ (bibl. com.), 29, 47, 263
 commas in, 266
 labels for, 263
 optional argument of, 266
 spaces in, 266
bibl.tpl (sample file), 47
biblatex (pack.), 447
 bibliographies, 29, 36, *see also under BIB_TE_X*, 47–48, 261–267
 AMS support for, 436, 437–438
 appear in back matter, 249
 citing references from, 29, 47, 264, 439, 441
 as hyperlinks in PDF files, 321
 with BIB_TE_X, 439
 commands for, 437, 439
 conventions, for labels, 48
 defining, 29, 40–41, 48, 66, 261–267, 375, 407, 423–437, 442
 document class options affecting, 308, 308
 entries made in auxiliary files for, 441, 443, 531
 examples of, 40–41, 43, 47, 261–263, 421–423
 in articles, *see also* bibliographies, sample files for, 40–41, 423, 436, 446
 multiple, in a document, 267
 numbering of, 48, 264
 portability of, 426, 428
 processed files, *see* bbl
 sample files for, 423, 437, 437–438, 446
 styles, 421, 422, 437
 AMS, 266, 421, 426, 437, 439
 templates, 261
 with amsrefs, 447
 $\backslash\bibliography$ (bibl. com.), 69, 437, 439
 $\backslash\bibliographystyle$ (bibl. com.), 437, 439
 $\backslash\bibname$ (redef. name), 267, 376
 $\backslash\bibstyle$ (aux. file com.), 441
BIB_TE_X, 421–447
 AMS support for, 436
 citing references with, 439
 commands, 436, 439
 in auxiliary files, 441
 database files, *see* bib
 log files, *see* blg
 processed bibliography files, *see* bbl
 running, 437–446
 sample files for, 423, 437, 437–438
 style files, *see* bst
 styles, 421, 422, 426, 437, 439
BIB_TE_X 1.0 (Patashnik), 559
BIB_TE_Xing (Patashnik), 446
 $\backslash\Big$ (math delim. size com.), 168
 $\backslash\big$ (math delim. size com.), 168
 $\backslash\bigcap$ (\bigcap large math op.), 175, 511
 $\backslash\bigcirc$ (\bigcirc math op.), 506
 $\backslash\bigcup$ (\bigcup large math op.), 175, 511
 $\backslash\Bigg$ (math delim. size com.), 168
 $\backslash\bigg$ (math delim. size com.), 168
 $\backslash\Biggl$ (math delim. size com.), 169
 $\backslash\biggl$ (math delim. size com.), 169, 184

- \biggm (math delim., as binary rel. size com.), 170
 \Biggr (math delim. size com.), 169
 \biggr (math delim. size com.), 169, 184
 \Bigl (math delim. size com.), 169
 \bigl (math delim. size com.), 169
 \bigm (math delim., as binary rel. size com.), 170
 \bigdot (• large math op.), 175, 511
 \bigoplus (⊕ large math op.), 175, 511
 \bigotimes (⊗ large math op.), 175, 511
 \Bigr (math delim. size com.), 169
 \bigr (math delim. size com.), 169
 \bigskip (spacing com.), 104
 \bigsqcup (⊔ large math op.), 175, 511
 \bigstar (★ math sym.), 508
 \bigtriangledown (▽ math op.), 506
 \bigtriangleup (△ math op.), 506
 \biguplus (⊕ large math op.), 175, 511
 \bigvee (∨ large math op.), 175, 511
 \bigwedge (∧ large math op.), 175, 511
 binary operations, 188, 195, 506
 + and – rule, 191, 213, 216
 adding white space around, 155
 and alignment of displayed formulas, 218
 and breaking displayed formulas, 213, 216, 217
 created with \overset, 193
 created with \underset, 183
 defining, 195
 and subformulas, 216
 for congruences, 173
 binary relations, 170, 181, 188, 189, 191, 503, 504
 adding white space around, 155
 and alignment of displayed formulas, 218
 and breaking displayed formulas, 217
 created with \overset, 183, 193
 defining, 195
 delimiters as, 170
 math delimiters as, 170
 negated, 181, 194, 505
 \binom (math com.), 23, 159
 binomial coefficients, 23, 159–160
 in inline and displayed math environments, 160
 bitmap fonts, 543
 Black, Alison, 553, 557
 blackboard bold (math alphabet), 181, 197, 390
 \blacklozenge (◆ math sym.), 508
 \blacksquare (■ math sym.), 508
 \blacktriangle (▲ math sym.), 508
 \blacktriangledown (▼ math sym.), 508
 \blacktriangleleft (◀ binary rel.), 504
 \blacktriangleright (▶ binary rel.), 504
 blank
 lines
 in displayed math environments, 51, 153, 157, 215
 in inline math environments, 153
 in text environments, 118
 in top matter commands, 273
 in verbatim environments, 146
 terminating paragraphs with, 11, 64, 99, 118, 144
 math delimiters, 168, 182
 math symbol for commutative diagrams (◎), 240
 blg (BIBTeX log files), 441, 442
 block (beamer env.), 343
 block comment, *see* comments
 Blue Sky Research, 525, 543
 blue spaces, *see also* tie, unbreakable spaces, nonbreakable spaces, 76
 bm (pack.), 312
 Bmatrix (subsidiary math env.), 235
 bmatrix (subsidiary math env.), 235
 \bmod (mod math op.), 173, 174, 506
 body
 of books, 467
 of documents, 11, 36, 37, 41, 68, 164, 248–268
 of environments, 68
 of page, 268
 of presentations, 327
 of theorem environment, 46
 bold
 font weight, 14, 89, 90, 93, 94, 95, 123, 163, 184, 196, 196, 197, 301, 390, 516
 math symbols, 197–199, 301, 312
 \boldsymbol (math font weight com.), 184, 197, 198, 301, 512
 BOOK (bibl. entry type), 424, 429–430
 book (doc. class), xxxii, 253, 376, 465, 466–473, 474, 524, 525, 529
 BOOKLET (bibl. entry type), 424, 435
 bookmarks=true (opt. of hyperref pack.), 320
 bookmarks, in PDF documents, 321
 books
 bodies of, 467
 document classes for, 253, 465, 466–473, 474, 476, 524, 525, 529
 options of, 468
 final preparation of, 482–487
 in BIBTeX database files, 429–430
 logical design of, 479–481
 numbering of structures in, 466
 sectioning of, 466–467, 479

- books (*continued*)
 - structure of, 467
 - top matter of, 251
 - writing with L^AT_EX, 465–487
- `booktabs` (pack.), 140
- `booktitle` (BIB_TE_X database field), 425, 433
- `\bot` (\perp math sym.), 508
- bottoms, of text boxes, 405
- `\bowtie` (\bowtie binary rel.), 503
- `\Box` (\square math sym.), 508
- `\boxdot` (\boxdot math op.), 506
- boxes, 107–115
 - and length commands, 405
 - around formulas, 205–206
 - commands for measuring, 406
 - invisible, *see* struts
 - multiline, 107
 - paragraph, 110–112
 - solid, 113–114, *see also* struts
 - text, 107–115
 - alignment of contents in, 107, 111
 - behave as single characters, 107
 - commands for, xxvi, 27, 33, 83, 99, 107, 107–115, 138, 140, 154, 162–163, 181, 206, 241, 301
 - environments for, 107, 109, 112, 383, 384
 - fine tuning placement of, 115
 - framed, 109–110
 - measurements of, 405
 - single line, 107–109, 163
 - vertical alignment of, 111, 115
 - vertical alignment of, 111
- `\boxminus` (\boxminus math op.), 506
- `\boxplus` (\boxplus math op.), 506
- `\boxtimes` (\boxtimes math op.), 506
- Braams, Johannes, xxxiii, 523, 547, 557, 559
- braces
 - must be balanced, 72, 77, 87, 166, 462
 - special, 18, 49, 72, 73, 152, 153, 157
 - cannot overlap, 72–73
 - environments act as, 72
 - stretchable horizontal, 178–179
 - braces, curly ($\{ \}$), 8, 14, 19, 23, 69–71, 158, 159, 180, 181, 188–190, 204, 216, 217, 279, 285, 366, 379
 - and command declarations, 367
 - as math delimiters, 167, 509
 - define scope, 71–73
 - in BIB_TE_X entries, 424, 426, 427, 436
 - in `\index` commands, 462
 - in text ($\{ \}$), 77, 81, 518, 530
 - unbalanced, 21, 77
 - with `\def`, 378
- brackets, square ([]), 8, 62
 - as math delimiters, 24, 167, 509
 - breaking formula lines within, 217
 - enclose optional arguments, 15, 27, 69–70, 123, 132, 135, 166, 331
 - with `\newcommand`, 370
- `\breakhere` (beamer com.), 351
- breaking
 - formulas, *see under* formulas
 - lines, *see under* lines
 - pages, *see under* pages
 - paragraphs, *see under* paragraphs
- breve (‘ text accent), 79, 516
- `\breve` (‘̄ text accent), 177, 512
- Bringhurst, Robert, 67, 553, 557
- browsers, *see under* Internet
- `bst` (BIB_TE_X style files), 421, 421, 422, 426, 437, 439
 - determine use of fields, 425
 - form of citations created by, 428
 - location of, 439
- `\bullet` (• math op.), 506
- `\bullet` (• text sym.), 81, 518
 - bulleted lists, 119
- `\Bumpeq` (\approx binary rel.), 504
- `\bumpeq` (\simeq binary rel.), 504
- Butcher, Judith, 553, 557
- `\bysame` (bibl. com.), 266, 375, 391, 442, 443
- C**
 - `\c` (ç cedilla text accent), 79, 516
 - `\circ` (copyright text sym.), 81, 518
 - `\calc` (pack.), 312, 403, 406
 - calligraphic (math alphabet), 185, 197, 301, 390, 512
 - `\Cap` (\Cap math op.), 506
 - `\cap` (\cap math op.), 506
 - capitalization, in bibliographic databases, 266
 - `\caption`, 39, 52
 - in figures, 259
 - in tables, 259
 - optional argument of, 476
 - captions, 134, 476
 - in figures, 259
 - in lists, 120, 476
 - in tables, 259
 - multiple, 259
 - caret (^), 77
 - Carlisle, David, xxxiii, 123, 136, 257, 259, 320, 368, 523, 559
 - caron (‘ text accent), 79, 516
 - case-sensitivity
 - of BIB_TE_X fields and entry types, 425
 - of command names, 14, 69
 - of environment names, 69

- of `\label` arguments, 257
- of sort keys in `\index` commands, 462
- cases** (subsid. math env.), 33, 208, 210, **239**
 - page breaks in, 242
- `\ccname` (redef. name), 376
- `CD` (subsid. math env.), 240–242
- `\cdot` (math op.), 23, **158**, 506
- `\cdots` (centered ellipsis), **160**, 186
- cedilla (ç text accent), 79, **516**
- ceiling math delimiters, 167, 509
- `center` (text align. env.), **8**, 106, **124**, 134, 227, 407
 - breaking lines in, 124
 - \LaTeX definition of, 414
- `\centerdot` (• math op.), **506**
- centered ellipses, **24**, 160
- `\centering` (alignment com. declaration), 54, **124**, 227, 327
- centering text, 8, 14, 124
 - in columns in `tabular` environments, 135
 - in presentations, 54, 327
 - in tables, 134, 137
- `\centertags` (doc. class opt.), **298**
- centimeter (cm abs. unit), 12, 15, 105, 107, 111, 403
- `\cfrac` (math com.), **200**
- `\chapter` (struct. com.), 253, 255, 304, **466**
 - arguments of, 466
 - numbering of
 - equations in, 466
 - in front and back matter, 467
- `\chapter` (counter), 399, 399
- chapter (\BIBTeX database field), 425
- `\chaptername` (redef. name), 376
 - and `hyperref` package, 323
- chapters
 - document class options to set start pages for, 468
 - grouping into parts, 466
 - in \BIBTeX database files, 436
 - in books, 466
 - numbering of, in front and back matter, 467
- characters, *see also* glyphs
 - accented, 9, 15, 62, 69, **79–80**, 82, **176–178**, 183, 322, 416, 427
 - European, 15, **79–80**, 515–516
 - following `verbatim` environments, 146
 - Greek, 181, 389–390, 502
 - Hebrew, 501
 - invalid, 9, 63
 - line ending, *see* line ending characters
 - math, 17, 63
 - special, **9**, **63**, **76–78**
 - accessing with `\symbol`, 77, 311
 - in `\index` commands, 457
- `\check` (x̄ math accent), **177**, **512**
- checkers, spelling, 48, 495
- Chen, Pehong, 449, 463, 557
- `\chi` (χ Greek char.), **502**
- `\circ` (◦ math op.), **506**
- `\circlearrowleft` (↙ math arrow), **507**
- `\circlearrowright` (↗ math arrow), **507**
- `\circledast` (⊛ math op.), **506**
- `\circledcirc` (⊛ math op.), **506**
- `\circleddash` (⊖ math op.), **506**
- `\circledS` (Ⓢ math sym.), **508**
- circumflex (^)
 - text accent, 79, **516**
 - text symbol, **81**, **518**
- `\citation` (aux. file com.), 441
- citations, bibliographic, 29, 47, 255, **263**, **439**, 441
 - created by \BIBTeX styles, 428, **439**
 - hyperlinks in PDF files, 321
 - showing in margins, 257
- `\cite` (bibliographic com.), 29, 47, 255, **263**, 441
 - multiple citations, 264
 - optional argument of, 264
 - showing contents in margin, 313
 - showing labels in margins, 257
 - spaces in, 264
 - with \BIBTeX , 439
- classes, document, *see* document classes
- classification of math symbols, **188–189**, 195
- `\cleardoublepage` (page breaking com.), 101
- `\cleardoublepage.sty` (sample file), 101
- `\clearpage` (page breaking com.), **101**, **261**
- clients
 - e-mail, 65
 - FTP, 538
- `\cline` (table com.), **137**, 137–138, **138**
- `\cls` (doc. class files), 250, 375, 410
- `\clubsuit` (♣ math sym.), **508**
- CM (Computer Modern) fonts, *see* Computer Modern fonts
- `\cm` (centimeter abs. unit), 12, 15, 105, 107, 111, 403
- `\cmr10.tfm` (\TeX font metric file), 529
- coefficients, binomial, *see* binomial coefficients
- collections, in \BIBTeX database files, 431–432
- `\colon` (: math com.), 63, **191**
- colophons, of books, 467
- `\color` (beamer com.), 339, 349
- color, in presentations, 348–350
- `\colorbox` (beamer com.), 349
- `\colorlinks` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 320, 321
- column (beamer env.), 348

- columns
 - double
 - document class options for, 299, 307
 - figures spanning, 259
 - footnotes in, 313
 - tables spanning, 259
 - in presentations, 347–348
 - math
 - adjusted, 231–242
 - adjusting with `f\align` environment, 221
 - in aligned formulas, 219–231
 - specifying in `matrix` subsidiary environments, 233
 - multiple, 101, 313, 523
 - separator (&), 25, 135, 220, 221
 - width of, in `tabular` environments, 136
- `columns` (beamer env.), 348
- combining
 - document class options, 308
 - encapsulators in `\index` commands, 455
- command declarations, 73, 90, 124, 137, 227
 - affecting multiple paragraphs, 90
 - do not take arguments, 73
 - for fonts, *see* font command declarations
 - scope of, 90, 367–368, 382
 - using in user-defined commands, 90, 367–368
- command files, *see also* sty files and packages, 250, 366, 386–392
 - commands in, 386
 - terminating, 392
- commands, 67–74
 - *-ed form, 46, 69, 98, 101, 103, 105, 129, 130, 148, 173, 195, 196, 242, 253, 322, 373, 382, 385, 439, 467, 473
 - arguments of, *see under* arguments or specific commands, 327
 - as tokens, 529
 - defining, *see* user-defined commands
 - delimited, *see* delimited commands
 - for boxes, *see under* boxes
 - for dates and times, *see* time commands
 - for expanding values, 80, 87, 113, 400
 - for figures, *see under* figures or floats
 - for filling horizontal space, 106, 113, 126, 186, 233, 235, 414
 - for floats, *see under* floats
 - for fonts, *see* font commands
 - for graphics, *see under* graphics
 - for indexing, *see under* indexing
 - for presentations, *see under* presentations, beamer, and FoilTeX
 - for tables, *see under* tables or floats
- fragile, 74
 - protecting, 74, 252, 253, 466, 475
- generalized, *see* user-defined commands
- global, *see under* scope
- in preamble, *see under* preamble
- length, *see* length commands
- local, *see under* scope
- logical design using, 52–53
- long, 73
- math, *see* math commands
- names of, 68
 - case-sensitivity of, 14, 69
- primitive, *see* primitive commands
- providing, 375
- redefining, 374–375
- scope of, *see under* scope
- sectioning, *see* structural commands
- short, 73, 90, 273, 284
 - defining, 373–374
- spacing, *see* spacing commands
- start with \, 8, 14, 68
- structural, *see* structural commands
- terminating, 19, 69, 154
- T_EX, *see under* T_EX
- text style, *see* text style commands
- to avoid using, 94, 481
- top matter, *see under* top matter
- types of, 73–74
- user-defined, *see* user-defined commands
- commas (,), 9, 62
 - and italic correction, 92
 - in `\bibitem` commands, 266
 - in BIBT_EX databases, 424, 425, 445
 - use in formulas, 155
- comment (comment env.), 86–87, 313, 387, 523
 - locating errors with, 87
 - nesting, 86
- comments, 10, 85–87
 - block comment, 6, 50, 51, 86, 478, 494, 498
 - keyboard equivalents, 499
 - block uncomment, 6, 494, 498
 - creating with % characters, 6, 21, 85, 86, 141, 294
 - creating with comment environments, 86–87
- finding errors using, 6, 19, 86, 366, 387
- in BIBT_EX database files, 86, 443
- inserted using `kill` command, 141
- marginal, 112–113, 484
 - in double-sided documents, 112
 - in equations, 112
 - in multiline math environments, 112
 - space between, 404
 - width of paragraph box for, 113

- removing end-of-line characters with, 84, 85, 458
 commutative diagrams, 240–242, 301
`comp.text.tex` (newsgroup), 542
`\complement` (C math sym.), 508
 components
 building formulas from, 164–166
 of formulas, 22–27, 157–166
 of pages, 268
 Comprehensive TeX Archive Network, *see* CTAN
 computer, *see* Mac, PC, and UNIX
 Computer Modern (CM) fonts, 89, 89, 93, 544, 545
 bold extended, 89
 ligatures in, 79
 math bold italic, 196
 math italic, 196
 PostScript versions of, 523, 525, 543
 roman, 89, 196, 529
 sans serif, 89
 typewriter, 78, 78, 89
 conference proceedings, in BibTeX database files, 424, 430–432
`\cong` (≡ binary rel.), 503
 congruences, 24, 173
 as binary operations, 173
 consecutive numbering, of proclamations, 127–128
 contents, table of, *see under* tables
`\contentsline` (toc file com.), 473
`\contentsname` (redef. name), 376
 context, affects style of emphasized text, 91
 continued fractions, 200
`\contrib` (top matter com.), 276
`\contrib` (LaTeX distr. directory), 540
 controls, float, 134, 260–261
 conventions for labels
 in bibliographies, 48
 of equations, 28
 of sections, 46
 converting
 files
 from DVI to PostScript, 318
 from PostScript to PDF, 319
 from articles to presentations, 53, 326
`\coprod` (\coprod large math op.), 175, 511
`\copyright` (© copyright), 81, 518
 corner math delimiters (⟨, ⟲, ⟳, ⟷), 167, 509
 corollaries, *see* proclamations
 correction, italic, *see* italic correction
`\cos` (cos math op.), 172, 510
`\cosh` (cosh math op.), 172, 510
`\cot` (cot math op.), 172, 510
`\coth` (coth math op.), 172, 510
 counters, 123, 233, 377, 399–403
 and \include commands, 400
 and \label commands, 402
 and proclamations, 399
 arithmetic with, 312, 402–403
 defined in preamble, 400
 defining, 400
 incrementing, 402
 LaTeX, 399
 linking with other counters, 400, 401
 names of, 128
 store numbers, 399
 styles for, 87, 123, 382, 401, 400–401, 411
 values of, 87, 400
 printing, 80, 113, 400
 setting, 399–400, 402
 with list environments, 411
 Courier, in LaTeX documents, 544
 cross-referencing, 47–48, 255–258, 267, 322
 among multiple documents, 313
 and automatic renumbering, 28, 536
 entries made in auxiliary files for, 443, 531
 in indexes, 457
 in proof environment titles, 132
 inside presentations, 328
 labels for, 28, 31, 46, 50–51, 202, 215, 231, 252, 255, 259, 267, 402
 of equations, 28, 27–29, 31, 156, 202, 203, 219, 256
 groups of, 218–219
 in multiline math environments, 215
 of list items, 119, 123
 of tables, 134
 page numbers, 28, 31, 202, 258, 267, 484, 531
 with varioref package, 313
 section numbers, 28, 31, 46, 123, 132, 134, 156, 202, 215, 252, 255, 301, 531
 using ties (~) with, 28, 66, 257
 within BibTeX databases, 432–433
`\crossref` (BibTeX database field), 425
`\csc` (csc math op.), 172, 510
 CTAN (Comprehensive TeX Archive Network), 310, 537, 538–540, 542, 544, 546, 553
 catalogue, 539
 LaTeX distribution on, 539
 mirrors of, 540
 packages on, 464, 540
 URLs for, 538
`\cup` (⊈ math op.), 506
`\cup` (⊉ math op.), 506
`\curlyeqprec` (⊸ binary rel.), 504
`\curlyeqsucc` (⊹ binary rel.), 504
`\curlyvee` (⊸ math op.), 506
`\curlywedge` (⊙ math op.), 506

- \curraddr (top matter com.), 278
 rules for using, 277
- \curvearrowleft (\curvearrowleft math arrow), 507
- \curvearrowright (\curvearrowright math arrow), 507
- customizing
 article templates, 44–45
 for AMS document classes, 294–297
 preambles of, 44, 294
 top matter of, 44, 294
 indentation of text, 103
 \LaTeX , 363–417
 dangers of, 415–417
 lists
 and counters, 411
 defining new, 406–415
 theorem styles, 131
- cyrillic (\LaTeX distr. directory), 311
- cyrillic (pack.), 312
- D**
- \d (. \cdot underdot text accent), 79, 516
- \dag († dagger)
 math symbol, 508
 text symbol, 81, 518
- \dagger († math op.), 506
- \daleth (daleth Hebrew char.), 501
- Dante (German \TeX user group), 541
- dashes, 62
 em dash (—), 14, 75, 81, 518
 en dash (–), 14, 75, 81, 518
 in $\text{BIB}\text{\TeX}$ databases, 427
- \dashleftarrow (↔ math arrow), 507
- \dashrightarrow (→ math arrow), 507
- \dashv (⊣ binary rel.), 503
- databases, $\text{BIB}\text{\TeX}$, *see also bib*, 421, 423–437, 440
- \date (top matter com.), 37, 44, 80, 87, 249, 275, 304, 469
 with letter document class, 309
- \datename (redef. name), 376
- dates
 commands for, *see also \date and time*
 commands, 14, 37, 44, 70, 80, 275, 548
 \LaTeX release, 86, 251, 532
 of packages, 533
- \day (time com.), 80
- \dbinom (display-style binomial com.), 160
- \column (pack.), 136, 313
- \ddag (‡ dagger)
 math symbol, 508
 text symbol, 81, 518
- \ddagger (‡ math op.), 506
- \ddot (. \ddot{x} math accent), 177, 512
- \ddot (. \ddot{x} math accent), 177, 512
- \ddot (. \ddot{x} math accent), 177, 512
- \ddots (. \ddots diagonal ellipsis), 161, 235
- decimals, alignment on, 136, 313
- declarations, command, *see command declarations*
- \DeclareMathOperator (op. def. com.), 173, 195, 196, 198, 250, 301
- \DeclareMathOperator* (op. with limits def. com.), 173, 195
- declaring, types of math symbols, 195
- \dedicatory (top matter com.), 275
- \def (\TeX com.), 416
 defining commands with, 378
 overwriting previously defined commands with, 378
- \definition (procl. style), 129, 129–131
- definitions, *see proclamations*
- \deg (deg math op.), 172, 510
- \delarray (pack.), 313
- delimited commands, 378–380
 invoking, 378
- delimiters
 for displayed math environments, 18
 for inline math environments, 18, 74, 152–153
 for $\verb|verb|$ commands, 147
 in $\text{BIB}\text{\TeX}$ database files, 424
 math, *see math delimiters*
- \Delta (Δ Greek char.), 502
- \delta (δ Greek char.), 502
- depth
 of tables of contents, 403
 of text boxes, 108, 111, 405, 405
- \depth (length com.), 108, 108, 111
- description (text list env.), 118, 120–121
- design
 logical, 52–53
 of books, 479–481
 of document classes, 522
 visual, 52–53, 268–270, 358
- \det (det math op.), 172, 510
- device independent files, *see DVI files*
- \frac ($\frac{x}{y}$), 158, 186, 200
- \DH (Eth Eur. char.), 519
- \dh (eth Eur. char.), 519
- \diagdown (\\math sym.), 508
- diagonal ellipses, 235
- diagrams, commutative, *see commutative diagrams*
- \diagup (//math sym.), 508
- \Diamond (◊ math sym.), 508
- \diamond (◊ math op.), 506
- \diamondsuit (◊ math sym.), 508

- dieresis, *see* umlaut
 diesis (‡)
 math symbol, 506, 508
 text symbol, 81, 518
 $\backslash\mathrm{digamma}$ (*F* Greek char.), 502
 $\backslash\dim$ (dim math op.), 172, 510
 dimensions, *see also* measurements
 units for measuring, 12, 15, 89, 93, 95, 96,
 105, 107, 111, 190, 308, 403, 513
 with length commands, 404
 directories, *see under* AMS and L^AT_EX
 distributions
 $\backslash\displaybreak$ (display break com.), 242, 243
 optional argument of, 243
 displayed formulas, *see displayed math environments*
 displayed fractions, *see under* fractions
 displayed math environments, 17, 25, 27–33,
 152
 $\backslash[$ (start math mode), 18, 152
Visual Guide to, 207, 208
 $\backslash]$ (end math mode), 18, 152
 act as special braces, 152
 $\backslash\align$, 30–31, 33, 208, 210, 219–224, 230,
 242
 $\backslash\align*$, 31, 221, 226
 $\backslash\alignat$, 208, 210, 224–226
 blank lines in, 51
 breaking pages in, 242–243
 $\backslash\displaymath$, 152, 153, 156, 157, 231
 $\backslash\eqnarray$, 222
 $\backslash\equation$, 27, 33, 156–157, 201, 231, 328
 $\backslash\equation*$, 157, 157, 201, 231, 328
 $\backslash\flalign$, 208, 210, 221
 font size in, 199
 $\backslash\gather$, 208, 210, 211–212, 219, 242
 $\backslash\gather*$, 211
 in direct succession, 482
 inline-style binomials in, 160
 $\backslash\multline$, 208, 210, 212–214
 $\backslash\multline*$, 213–214
 $\backslash\subequations$, 203, 204, 219, 401
 displayed text environments, 117, 143–147
 $\backslash\alltt$, 159, 311
 blank lines in, 118
 $\backslash\multicols$, 101, 523
 $\backslash\proof$, 39
 $\backslash\quotation$, 144
 $\backslash\quote$, 143
 tabbing, 141–143, 551, 552
 $\backslash\tabular$, 78, 133–140, 237, 259, 312,
 313, 523, 551, 552
 theorem, 37, 46, 52, 125, 128, 343, 384
 $\backslash\verb+verbatim+$, 145–147, 148, 313
 verse, 144–145
 $\backslash\xcb$, 476
 $\backslash\displaymath$ (disp. math env.), 152, 153, 156,
 157, 231
 $\backslash\displaystyle$ (math font size com.), 199,
 204
 dissertations, in BIB^TE_X database files, 433–434
 distributions
 AMS packages, 271, 300–302, 325, 380,
 417, 436, 437, 521, 528, 553
 L^AT_EX, 78, 86, 257, 303–308, 310–313,
 489, 525, 528, 529, 532, 534, 539,
 540, 547, 553
 PSNFSS, 544–545
 T_EX, 528
 $\backslash\div$ (÷ math op.), 158, 506
 $\backslash\divideontimes$ (* math op.), 506
 division, 22, 63, 158, 191, 506
 $\backslash\DJ$ (Dyet Eur. char.), 519
 $\backslash\dj$ (dyet Eur. char.), 519
 $\backslash\doc$ (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 311
 document (text env.), 11, 37, 41, 68, 164, 248
 document class options
 9pt, 297
 10pt, 104, 297, 306
 11pt, 297, 306
 12pt, 93, 297, 306
 a4paper, 298, 306
 a5paper, 306
 are passed on to packages, 250
 b5paper, 306
 centertags, 298
 combining, 308
 draft, 13, 96, 249, 300, 306
 executivepaper, 306
 final, 300, 306
 fleqn, 298, 307
 for AMSFonts, 300
 for bibliographies, 308, 308
 for double-column documents, 299, 307
 for double-sided printing, 299, 307, 468
 for font sizes, 297, 306
 for page orientation, 307
 for position of equation numbers, 298, 307
 for start of chapters, 468
 for title pages, 299, 307, 468
 handout, 358
 landscape, 307
 legalpaper, 85, 298, 306
 leqno, 298, 307
 letterpaper, 298, 306
 noamsfonts, 300
 nomath, 300
 notitlepage, 299, 307, 468
 onecolumn, 299, 307
 oneside, 299, 307, 468

- document class options (*continued*)
 `openany`, 468
 `openbib`, 308, 308
 `openright`, 468
 `psamsfonts`, 300
 `reqno`, 298, 307
 `tbtags`, 298
 `titlepage`, 249, 299, 307, 468
 `trans`, 358
 `twocolumn`, 85, 101, 259, 299, 307, 308,
 313
 `twoside`, 85, 249, 299, 307, 308, 468
 document classes, 53, 82, 125, 376, 528, 529
 `amsart`, 36, 82, 118, 125, 249–251, 254,
 271–302, 465, 469, 525, 529, 536
 `amsbook`, xxxii, 253, 465, 468, 469, 476,
 525, 529
 `amsproc`, 273, 529
 anatomy of, 35–43
 `article`, 35–43, 249, 251, 254, 263, 265,
 273, 302, 303, **303–308**, 525, 529
 `beamer`, 325–359
 `book`, xxxii, 253, 465, 469, 474, 524, 525,
 529
 changing, 536
 `c1s` files, 250, 375, 410
 design of, 522
 determine
 placement of equation numbers, 298,
 307
 position of equations, 298, 307
 spacing, 102
 `foils`, 53
 for books, 253, 465, **466–473**, 474, 476,
 524, 525, 529
 options of, 468
 for presentations, *see under* `FoilTeX` and
 `beamer`
 legacy, 54, 118, 249, 254, 263, 273, 302,
 305, **303–313**, 529
 `letter`, 308–310, 529
 options of, *see* document class options
 `proc`, 529
 `proc-1`, 272
 `report`, 253, 303, **303–308**, 529
 `sample`, 10
 `sample.cls`, 11
 `slides`, 303, 529
 document font families, 8, 14, 90, **89–90**, 93,
 123, 163, 301, 390, 412, 516, 544
 normal, 90
 roman, **89**, 544
 sans serif, **89**, 544
 typewriter style, **89**, 544
 document parameters, for page design, 552
- documentation
 for AMS document classes and packages,
 552
 for `beamer` document class, 325, 358
 for `LATEX`, 311, 552
 packages, 312
 for New Font Selection Scheme (NFSS),
 553
 `\documentclass` (preamble com.), 4, 13, 35,
 36, 53, **70**, 85, 180, 249, 294, 326, 355
 and `\NeedsTeXFormat` command, 250
- documents
 body of, 11, 36, 37, 41, 68, 164, **248–268**
 cross-referencing among multiple, 313
 design of, 268–270
 `LATEX`, 247–270
 on the Internet, 317–323
 using AMS document classes in, 271
 legacy, 319
 master, 477–479
 preamble of, 249–251
 printing and viewing, 5, 318, 530
 readability of, 93, 358
 splitting into multiple files, 476–479
 dollar sign (\$), *see also* \$ and \\$, **9**
 as inline math delimiter, 17, 18, 33, 74,
 152, **152**, 518
 as text symbol, 77, 81
 Doob, Michael, 110, 528, 557
 `\dot` (dot math accent), **177**, 512
 `\doteq` (≡ binary rel.), 503, 504
 `\dotfill` (space fill com.), 106
 dotless i and j (i and j), **79**, 79, 516
 `\dotplus` (+ math op.), 506
 `\dots` (... math ellipsis com.), 24, 78,
 160–161, 186
 dots, filling lines with, 106
 `\dotsb` (... math com.), 161
 `\dotsc` (... math com.), 161
 `\dotsi` (... math com.), 161
 `\dotsm` (... math com.), 161
 `\dotso` (... math com.), 161
 double accents, in math, **177**
 double acute (ˇ text accent), 79, 516
 double dagger (‡)
 math symbol, 506, 508
 text symbol, 81, 518
 double guillemet, 519
 double quote ("), 9, *see also* quotation marks,
 75, 81, 518
 in `\index` commands, 457
 in `BIBTeX` database fields, **424**, 445, **446**
 key, 9, 63, 75
 double spacing, 99

- double subscripts and superscripts, font size of, 199
 double vertical lines in CD environments, 241
 double-column documents
 and footnotes, 313
 document class options for, 85, 299, 307
 figures and tables, 259
 double-sided printing
 and marginal comments, 112
 document class options for, 85, 299, 307, 468
 $\backslash\text{doublebarwedge}$ ($\bar{\wedge}$ math op.), 506
 $\backslash\text{doublecap}$ (\Cap math op.), 506
 $\backslash\text{doublecup}$ (\Cup math op.), 506
 $\backslash\text{doublespacing}$ (setspace com.), 99
 $\backslash\text{Downarrow}$ (\Downarrow)
 math arrow, 507, 509
 math delimiter, 167
 $\backslash\text{downarrow}$ (\Downarrow)
 math arrow, 507
 math delimiter, 167, 509
 $\backslash\text{downdownarrows}$ ($\Downarrow\Downarrow$ math arrow), 507
 Downes, Michael, 447, 523, 524
 $\backslash\text{downharpoonleft}$ (\Downarrow math arrow), 507
 $\backslash\text{downharpoonright}$ (\Downarrow math arrow), 507
 draft (doc. class opt.), 13, 96, 249, 300, **306**
 drivers
 printer, 312, 320, 526, **530**, 539
 video (DVI viewer), 526, 530
 Duchier, Denys, 523
 Dupré, Lyn, 85, 553, 557
 DVI files, 526, 530, 539
 converting to PostScript, 318
 printing, 530
 viewing, 526, 530
 dvipdf (opt. of hyperref pack.), 320
 dvipdfm (opt. of hyperref pack.), 320
 dvipdfmx (opt. of hyperref pack.), 320
 dvips (opt. of hyperref pack.), 320
 dvipsnam (opt. of xcolor pack.), 349
 dvipsone (opt. of hyperref pack.), 320
 dviwindo (opt. of hyperref pack.), 320
 dyet (Eur. char), 519
- E**
 e-mail, *see* $\backslash\text{email}$
 e-mail clients, 65
 editing cycle, 4–6
 Mac, 498
 PC, 491
 edition (BIBTeX database field), 425
 editor (BIBTeX database field), 425
 editors, text, xxvi, 4, 5, 9, 18, 48, 55, 63, 84, 88, 365, 490, 526
- Eijkhout, Victor, 553, 557
 electronic mail address, *see* $\backslash\text{email}$
 $\backslash\text{ell}$ (ℓ math sym.), 508
 ellipses (...)
 centered (...), **24**, **160**
 diagonal, 235
 in math, **24**, **160–161**, 233
 in text, **78**
 vertical, 235
 $\backslash\text{em}$ (font shape com. dec.), 90, 91, 92, 123, 367, 382, **516**
 em (font shape env.), 123
 em (rel. unit), 403, **513**
 em dash (—), **14**, **75**, 81, 83, **518**
 EM fonts, *see* European Modern fonts
 $\backslash\text{email}$ (top matter com.), 278, 281–283, 295, 296
 rules for using, 278
 $\backslash\text{emph}$ (font shape com.), 8, 14, 68, 90, **91**, 337, **516**
 emphasized (font shape), 8, 14, 28, 68, 90, **91**, 92, **123**, 125, 156, 367, 382, **516**
 and italic correction, 92
 context dependence of, 91
 empty (page style), 268
 empty group ({ }), 39, 55, 70, 159, 179, 188, 189, 194, 204, 279, 309
 $\backslash\text{emptyset}$ (\emptyset math sym.), 508
 en dash (–), **14**, **81**, 83, **518**
 in BIBTeX databases, 427
 Encapsulated PostScript (EPS), *see* EPS
 $\backslash\text{enclname}$ (redef. name), 376
 encodings, font, *see* font encodings
 $\backslash\text{end}$ (end of env.), 67, **68**, 72
 errors with, 72, 146, 478
 end-of-line characters, *see* line ending
 characters
 $\backslash\text{endinput}$ (input ending com.), 392, **478**
 eng (Eur. char), 519
 $\backslash\text{enlargethispage}$ (spacing com.), **101**, 484, 487
 $\backslash\text{enlargethispage*}$ (spacing com.), 101
 $\backslash\text{ensuremath}$ (math mode com.), **369**, 370, 375
 Enter key, *see* Return key
 entries
 bibliographic, *see under* bib
 glossary, *see under* glossaries
 index, *see under* indexing
 enumerate (list text env.), 313, 382
 enumerate (pack.), 123, 313, 382, 387
 enumi (counter), 123, 399
 enumii (counter), 399
 enumiii (counter), 399
 enumiv (counter), 399

- environments, 8, 14, 18, **67–74**
 *-ed forms, 157, 201, 211, 213, 215, 231,
 259
 act as braces, 72
 arguments of, *see under* arguments or
 specific environments
 \\ in, 124, 145
 begin with \begin, **68**, 72
 body of, 68
 case-sensitivity of names of, **69**
 end with \end, **68**, 72
 font size, 123
 for presentations, *see under* beamer and
 Foil \TeX
 for proclamations, *see* proclamations
 for tables, *see* tables
 indenting contents of, in source file, 155
 legacy, 123, 143–145, 407
 list, *see* list text environments
 logical design using, 535
 typesetting environment names, 535
 math, *see under* inline and displayed math
 environments, subsidiary math
 environments, *and* displayed text
 environments
 modifying, 380–383
 \\newline in, 98
 operating, *see under* PC, Mac, *and* UNIX
 short, 385
 subsidiary math, *see* subsidiary math
 environments
 text, *see* displayed text environments, list
 text environments, *and* text
 environments
 user-defined, *see* user-defined
 environments, *see* user-defined
 environments
 visual design using
 typesetting environment names, 535
- EPS (Encapsulated PostScript)
 files, 476, 483, 496
 format, 39, **259**, 483, 552
- \epsilon (ε Greek char.), **502**
- \eqcirc (= binary rel.), **504**
- \eqarray (math align. env.), 222
- \eqref (cross-ref. com.), **28**, 29, 31, 156, 202,
 203, 215, 219, 255, 256, 263, 328, 370
- \eqslantgtr (>) binary rel.), **504**
- \eqslantless (≤ binary rel.), **504**
- equals (=)
 binary relation, 63, **503**
 in BBTEX database fields, 424
 key, 8
- equation (counter), **399**, 399
- equation (disp. math env.), 27, 33, **156–157**,
 201, 231, 328
 blank lines in, 157
- equation* (disp. math env.), 157, **157**, 201,
 231, 328
- \equationname (hyperref redef. name), 323
- equations, 27–29
- document class options for placement of
 numbers, 298, 307
- grouping, 203–204
- in multiline math environments, 215
- in presentations, 328
- labels for, **28**, 256
- marginal comments in, 112
- numbering of, **27–29**, 55, **156–157**, 201,
 211, 213, 215
 groups, 218–219
 in chapters of books, 466
 preventing, 30, 31, 157, 201, 211, 213,
 215, 218, 231
 variants, **203**, 218
 within sections, 156, 250
- position of, 298, 307
- systems of, 225–226
- tagging, 29, **201–204**, 211, 213, 215, 218,
 230, 231
- \equiv (≡)
 binary relation, **503**
 math operator, 24, 174, 182, 371, 379
- error messages, 5, *see also* warning messages,
 48–52, 534
- Argument of \xxx has an extra }, 146
- Bad math environment delimiter, 132, 153, 475
- \begin{document} ended by \end{xxx}, 87, 146
- \begin{split} not allowed here, 231
- \begin{xxx} on input line xx ended by \end{yyy}, 49, 50, 72
- Can be used only in preamble, 250
- Command \xxx already defined, 367, 376, 381
- Display math should end with \$\$, 51
- Double superscript, 158
- Environment xxx undefined, 381
- Extra alignment tag has been changed to \cr, 237
- Extra }, or forgotten \xxx, 73, 223
- File ‘xxx’ not found, 534
- I was expecting a ‘,’ or a ’), 445, 446

- Illegal character in array arg, 237
 Illegal unit of measure (pt inserted), 114
 Incomplete \iffalse; all text was ignored after line *xx*, 309
 Invalid use of \xxx, 162
 line numbers in, 6, 9, 153, 154
 Misplaced \xxx, 135, 227, 233
 Missing \begin{document}, 126
 Missing control sequence inserted, 404
 Missing \$ inserted, 20, 51, 147, 153, 154, 157, 233
 Missing number, treated as zero, 98, 111
 Missing \right. inserted, 217
 Missing } inserted, 21, 49, 223
 No counter ‘*xxx*’ defined, 400
 Paragraph ended before \xxx was complete, 49, 50, 114, 126, 237, 373, 379, 462
 recorded in log file, 526
 Runaway argument?, 49, 126, 237, 284, 379, 462
 showing paragraph breaks in, 99
 Something’s wrong--perhaps a missing \item, 120, 263
 \tag won’t work here, 215
 Text line contains an invalid character, 9, 52, 64
 Too many }’s, 21, 72, 285
 Undefined control sequence, 44, 50, 71, 282, 284, 367
 Underfull \hbox, 97, 530
 Use of \xxx doesn’t match its definition, 379
 \verb command ended by end of line, 148
 with BIB_TE_X, 443–446
 in log (blg) files, 442
 You’re missing a field name, 444
 eszett (ß, SS), 81, 515, 548
 \eta (Greek char), 502
 \eth (ð math sym.), 508
 eth (Eur. char), 519
 eucl (pack.), 301, 302, 386, 512
 options, 301, 390, 512
 eufrak (pack.), 302
 Euler Fraktur (math alphabet), 180, 197, 301, 302, 390, 512
 Euler Script (math alphabet), 301, 302, 390, 512
 European accents, 15, 79–80
 characters, 15, 79–80, 515–516, 519
 quotation marks, 519
 European Modern (EM) fonts, 524
 ex (rel. unit), 403
 examples of bibliographies, 40–41, 43, 47, 261–263, 421–423
 of indexes, 450–452
 of nonbreakable spaces (~ spacing com.), 76
 of top matter commands, 282–285
 \except (table of contents com.), 473
 exclamation marks (!), 9, 62
 as float control, 260, 486
 in \index commands, 453, 454, 457
 Spanish (j), 81, 515, 518
 terminating sentences with, 64–67
 executivepaper (doc. class opt.), 306
 exercises, 476
 in books, 476
 within a section, 476
 \exists (math sym.), 508
 exiting, from interactive mode, 491, 534
 \exp (exp math op.), 172, 510
 expanding values of counters, 80, 400
 exscale (pack.), 301, 311
 extensibility of L_AT_EX and T_EX, 525
- F**
 Fairbairns, Robin, 523
 \fallingdotseq (= binary rel.), 504
 fancyhdr (pack.), 270, 537, 540
 FAQ (Frequently Asked Questions), 539, 542
 \fboxrule (length com.), 110
 \fboxsep (length com.), 110
 \fcolorbox (beamer com.), 349
 fd (font def. file), 544, 545, 546
 Fear, Simon, 140
 fields, bibliographic, *see under bib*
 figure (counter), 399
 figure (float env.), 39, 259–260, 327
 optional arguments of, 260, 486
 placement of, 484, 486
 figure* (float env.), 259
 \figurename (redef. name), 375, 376
 and hyperref package, 323
 figures, 259–260
 captions in, 476
 fragile commands in, 74
 commands for, 259, 476, 479
 double-column, 259
 forcing typesetting of, 101
 lists of, *see also under lists*, 475–476
 adding a line to, 476
 fragile commands in, 74

figures (*continued*)
 numbering of, 258, 259
 old-style, 62
 placement of, 260, 484, 486
 file formats, for graphics
 EPS, 39, 259, 483, 496, 552
 PDF, 39, 259, 326
 file transfer protocol, *see* FTP
fileerr (pack.), 313
 files
MakeIndex log, *see* ilg
 auxiliary, *see* aux
 BIBTEX databases, *see* bib
 BIBTEX log, *see* b1g
 BIBTEX style, *see* bst
 class (**cls**), *see under* document classes
 command, *see* command files
 converting from articles to presentations,
 53, 326
 documents composed of multiple, 476–479
 DVI, *see* DVI files
 Encapsulated PostScript, *see* EPS
 font definition, *see* fd
 font metric, *see also* tfm, *see under* font
 metrics
 glossary, *see* glo
 hyperref bookmarks, *see* out
 hyphenation pattern, *see under*
 hyphenation
 including in other files, 386, 478
 index entry, *see* idx
 list
 of figures, *see* lot
 of tables, *see* lot
 listing those used by a document, 387
 log, *see* log files
 naming of, 44
 with \graphicspath command, 479
 organization of, 476–479
 package source, *see under* packages
 portability of, 9
 Portable Document Format, *see* PDF, *see*
 PDF
 PostScript (PS), *see under* PostScript
 processed bibliography, *see* bbl
 processed index, *see* ind
 sample, *see* sample files
 source, *see* source files
 start on new page with \include
 command, 478
 style, *see* sty
 tables of contents, *see* toc
 terminating, 392, 478
 filling horizontal space, 106, 113, 126, 186, 233,
 235, 414
 final (doc. class opt.), 300, 306
 final preparation, of books, 482–487
 fine tuning
 of mathematical formulas, 190–192
 placement of root with \sqrt, 162
 placement of text boxes, 115
\Finv (\pm math sym.), 508
 fixed-size math delimiters, 168
fixltx2e.dtx, 311
fixltx2e.ins, 311
fixltx2e.sty, 311, 312
flalign (math align. env.), 208, 210, 221
\flat (\flat math sym.), 508
fleqn (doc. class opt.), 298, 307
 floats, *see also* tables and figures, 258–261
 commands, 259, 260
 controls, 134, 260–261
 environments, 133, 258–260
 figure, 39, 259–260, 260, 327
 figure*, 259
 locating, 484, 486
 table, 134, 258, 260
 table*, 259
 forcing typesetting of, 101
 specifying placement of, 260, 484
 floor math delimiters, 167, 509
 flush left
 alignment of formulas, 209, 210, 212, 214,
 221, 307
 column alignment, 231–232, 236
 columns in **tabular** environments, 135
 setting equations, 298, 307
 flush right
 alignment of formulas, 209, 210, 212, 214,
 221
 alignment of text, 106
 column alignment, 231–232, 236
 columns in **tabular** environments, 135
 setting equations, 298, 307
flushleft (text align. env.), 8, 124, 407
 breaking lines in, 124
flushright (text align. env.), 8, 68, 124, 407
 breaking lines in, 124
\fnsymbol (footnote counter style com.), 87
\foilhead (FoilTEX com.), 53, 55
 optional argument of, 56
foils (doc. class), 53
FoilTEX, 53
 commands for, 55
 folders, 3
 samples, *see* samples
 structure of, 477–479
 work, *see* work
 font command declarations, *see also* font
 commands, 90

- for shape
 - `\em`, 90, 91, 92, 123, 516
 - `\itshape`, 90, 91, 92, 94, 123, 412, 516
 - `\normalfont`, 90, 91, 123, 163, 516, 545
 - `\rmfamily`, 90, 123, 516
 - `\scshape`, 90, 91, 123, 516
 - `\sffamily`, 90, 94, 123, 516
 - `\slshape`, 90, 91, 92, 94, 95, 123, 516
 - `\ttfamily`, 90, 123, 142, 516
 - `\upshape`, 90, 91, 123, 382, 412, 516
- for weight
 - `\bfseries`, 71, 73, 90, 93, 94, 95, 123, 516
 - `\mdseries`, 90, 93, 516
- font commands, *see also* font command
 - declarations
 - and italic correction, 90, 92
 - and *MakeIndex*, 90
 - for selecting fonts using family names, 544
 - for series
 - `\textmd`, 90, 93, 516
 - for shape
 - `\emph`, 14, 68, 90, 91, 337, 516
 - `\textit`, 90, 91, 337, 516
 - `\textnormal`, 90, 90, 163, 516
 - `\textrm`, 90, 301, 516
 - `\textsc`, 90, 91, 516
 - `\textsf`, 90, 516
 - `\textsl`, 90, 91, 516
 - `\texttt`, 14, 76, 90, 516
 - `\textup`, 90, 91, 516
 - `\upn`, 156
 - for size
 - `\footnotesize`, 93, 94, 517
 - `\Huge`, 93, 93, 517
 - `\huge`, 93, 93, 517
 - `\LARGE`, 93, 93, 517
 - `\Large`, 93, 93, 94, 517
 - `\large`, 93, 93, 517
 - `\larger`, 94
 - `\normalsize`, 93, 93, 517
 - `\scriptsize`, 93, 93, 517
 - `\small`, 93, 93, 517
 - `\smaller`, 93, 93, 517
 - `\tiny`, 93, 93, 517
 - `\tinyer`, 93, 93, 517
 - for weight
 - `\textbf`, 14, 73, 90, 93, 163, 301, 337, 516
- low-level, 95
- math, *see* math font commands
- obsolete, 94
- orthogonality of, 94
- two-letter (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09), and italic correction, 95
- using in math environments, 163
- font encodings, 78, 78
 - `koi8-u`, 548
 - `LY1`, 545, 546
 - `OT1`, 544
 - `T1`, 82, 519, 547
- font environments
 - for series
 - `\bfseries`, 123
 - for shape
 - `\em`, 123
 - `\itshape`, 123
 - `\rmfamily`, 123
 - `\scshape`, 123
 - `\sffamily`, 123
 - `\slshape`, 123
 - `\ttfamily`, 123
 - `\upshape`, 123
 - for weight
 - `\bfseries`, 123
- font families, document, *see* document font families
- font metrics files, 318, 529, 544, 545
- font series, 89, 93
 - command declarations for, *see* command declarations
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - environments for, *see under* font environments
- font shapes
 - command declarations for, *see under* font command declarations
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - environments for, *see under* font environments
 - sans serif, 89
 - serif, 89
- font substitution, 94, 318, 484
 - warning messages, 94
- font weight, 89
 - command declarations for, *see under* font command declarations
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - environments for, *see under* font environments
- font width, 89
- `\fontenc` (pack.), 545, 547, 548
- `\fontfamily` (font selection com.), 544

- fonts
- AMSFonts, 300, **301–302**, 525, 528
 - document class options for, 300
 - obtaining, 540
 - PostScript versions of, 300, 301, 524, 525, 533
 - technical support for, 542
 - updates to, 533
 - bitmap, 543
 - blackboard bold, 181, **197**, 390
 - bold math, 184, **196**, **196**, **197**, **512**
 - calligraphic, 185, **197**, 301, 390, **512**
 - commands, *see under* font commands and
 - font command declarations
 - Computer Modern, *see* Computer Modern
 - Courier (typewriter shape), 317, 496, 544
 - encodings, *see* font encodings
 - Euler Fraktur, 180, **197**, 301, 302, 390, **512**
 - Euler Script, **301**, 302, 390, **512**
 - European Modern (EM), *see* European Modern fonts
 - for text in math mode, 163
 - Helvetica, 89, 544
 - including in PDF files, 318
 - including in PostScript files, 317
 - Lucida Bright, 543, 546
 - math, 195–197
 - size of, 199
 - monospaced, 88
 - names of
 - LATEX** 2.09, 313
 - PSNFSS (Berry scheme), 544
 - PostScript, *see under* PostScript
 - proportional, 88
 - proprietary
 - using in PDF files, 318
 - using in PostScript files, 317
 - samples, 313
 - selecting, 88–95
 - with \fontfamily command, 544
 - with \selectfont command, 95, 544
 - shapes, *see* font shapes
 - size of, 55, 89, 93, **93–94**, 123, **517**
 - document class options for, 297, 306
 - sources for, 546
 - substitution of, 94, 318, 484
 - Times, 89, 544–545
 - typewriter style, 88
 - weight, *see* font weight
 - width, *see* font width
- fontsmpl** (pack.), 313
- fonttbl.tex** (sample file), 78, 134
- footers, page, 268–270
- \footnote, 87
- \footnote (counter), 399
- footnotes, 87–88
 - and double-column documents, 313
 - fragile commands in, 74
 - in **minipage** environments, 112
 - indicated by symbols, 87
 - on title pages, 87
 - unmarked, 44, 279
- \footnotetextsize, **93**, **94**, **517**
- \forall (⟨math sym.⟩), 508
- forcing
 - floats to typeset, 101
 - indentation, 99
- formats
 - LATEX**, 529
 - TEX**
 - creating with **initex**, 528
 - files read by **virtex**, 528
 - Plain **TEX**, 528
- formats, file, *see* file formats
- formatting of documents, determined by
 - document classes, 61
- formula.tex** (sample file), 164–166
- formulas, 18
 - adjusted, 210, **231–242**
 - flush left and right, 214
 - aligning, **30–32**, 209–210, **219–231**, 242, 298, 524
 - multiline, 217–218
 - rules for, 217–218, 221
 - text in, 226–227
 - annotating, 225
 - boxed, *see under* boxes
 - breaking into multiple lines, 30–31, **217–218**
 - displayed, 483
 - rules for, 217
 - commas in, 155
 - components of, 22–27, 157–162
 - building using, 164–166
 - displayed, *see* displayed math environments
 - environments
 - gallery, 180–186
 - grouping, 210, **211–212**
 - inline, *see* inline math environments
 - multiline, **30–32**
 - splitting, 212–214
 - numbering, *see under* equation specifying fonts for, 163
- foundries, type, 544, 546
- \frac ($\frac{x}{y}$), 19, 21, 23, 70, **158**, 186, 200
- fractions, 19, 21, 23, 70, **158**, 186
 - continued, 200
 - displayed, **158**, 186
 - generalized, 204–205
 - inline, 158

- fragile commands, 74
 protecting, 74, 252, 253, 466, 475
- `frame` (beamer env.), 327, 328, 344
- `\framebox`, 109
- frames, *see also under* presentations, 327, 358
 environments of, 327
 outline (table of contents), 328
 titles, 327, 358
- `\frametitle` (beamer com.), 327, 328, 344
- `\frenchspacing` (spacing com.), 67
- Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), 539, 542
- front matter, 467
 numbering of chapters in, 467
 of AMS documents, 285
 of books, 473–475
- `\frontmatter` (struct. com.), 467
- `\frown` (\sim binary rel.), 503
- `ftnright` (pack.), 313
- `FTP` (File Transfer Protocol), 538
- G**
- `\Game` (\eth math sym.), 508
- `\Gammaamma` (Γ Greek char.), 502
- `\gammamma` (γ Greek char.), 502
- `gather` (disp. math env.), 208, 210, 211–212, 219, 483
 page breaks in, 242
 rules for, 211
- `gather*` (disp. math env.), 211
- `gathered` (subsidiad. math env.), 211, 227–230
 and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 243
- `\gcd` (gcd math op.), 172, 510
- `\ge` (\geq binary rel.), 503
- generalized
 commands, *see user-defined commands*
 fractions, 204–205
- `\genfrac` (math com.), 204–205
- `geometry` (pack.), 270
- `\geq` (\geq binary rel.), 503
- `\geqq` (\geqslant binary rel.), 504
- `\geqslant` (\geqslant binary rel.), 504
- `german` (opt. of babel pack.), 548
- `german.tex` (sample file), 548
- `\gg` (\gg binary rel.), 503
- `gg.tex` (sample file), 44–48
- `gg2.tex` (sample file), 45–46
- `ggamsart.tpl` (template file), 297
- `\ggg` (\ggg binary rel.), 504
- `\gimel` (\beth Hebrew char.), 501
- `glo` (glossary files), 464, 531
- global commands, *see under* scope
- glossaries, 464
 as a custom `list` environment, 414
 auxiliary file (`glo`), 464, 531
- defining, 464, 531
- `\glossary` (glossary com.), 464, 531
- glue, 378, 407, 530, 530
 horizontal, 530
 parameters of, 530
 vertical, *see also under* vertical spacing, 530
- glyphs, *see also* characters
 measuring, 530
- `\gnapprox` (\approx neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\gneq` ($\not\geq$ neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\gneqq` ($\not\geqslant$ neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\gnsim` ($\not\sim$ neg. binary rel.), 505
- go to line productivity tool, *see jump to a line*
- Google, 464, 538
- Goossens, Michel, xxxiii, 558, 559
- graphics
 commands for, 54, 259, 259, 260, 327, 341, 479, 496
 file extensions in, 496
 in presentations, 342
 formats
 EPS, 39, 259, 483, 496, 552
 PDF, 39, 259, 326
 including in documents, 259–260
 scaling, 259
- `graphics` (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 311, 539
- `graphics` (pack.), 312
- `\graphicspath` (graphics com.), 477
- `graphicx` (pack.), 37, 39, 250, 259–260, 300, 523, 552
- `\grave` (\grave grave text accent), 62, 79, 516
- `\grave` (\grave{x} math accent), 177, 512
- greater than ($>$)
 as binary relation, 503
 text symbol, 81, 518
- Greek letters, 181, 389–390, 502
- Greenwade, George D., 99
- grouping
 chapters into parts, 466
 equations, 203–204
 formulas, 210, 211–212
 symbols with math delimiters, 169
- groups
 of equations, 203–204
 cross-referencing, 218–219
 labels for, 204
 numbering, 218–219
 of tokens, 530
- `\gtapprox` (\gtrapprox binary rel.), 504
- `\gtrdot` (\gtrdot binary rel.), 504
- `\gtreqless` (\gtreqless binary rel.), 504
- `\gtreqqless` (\gtreqqless binary rel.), 504
- `\gtrless` (\gtrless binary rel.), 504

- \gtrsim (\gtrsim binary rel.), 504
 guillemets, 519
 \guillemotleft (Eur. quot. mark), 519
 \guillemotright (Eur. quot. mark), 519
 \guilsingleleft (Eur. quot. mark), 519
 \guilsinglright (Eur. quot. mark), 519
 Gurari, Eitan, 558
 GUTenberg (French T_EX user group), 541
 \gvertneqq (\gvertneqq $\not\equiv$ neg. binary rel.), 505
- H**
 \H double acute text accent (‘), 79, 516
 Hahn, Harley, 554, 558
 handout (beamer doc. class opt.), 358
 \hangafter
 T_EX command, 377
 length command, 100
 \hangindent (length com.), 99
 hanging indentation, 99–100, 145
 Hargreaves, Kathryn A., 553, 557
 Harrison, Michael A., 449, 463, 557
 Hart, Horace, 553, 559
 \hat (â math accent), 25, 177, 512
 \hbar (h̄ math sym.), 508
 \hdotsfor (space fill com.), 186, 233, 235
 optional argument of, 233
 headers, page, *see* running heads
 headings (page style), 268
 \headtoname (redef. name), 376
 \heartsuit (♥ math sym.), 508
 Hebrew letters, 501
 \height (length com.), 108, 108, 111
 height, of text boxes, 108, 110, 111, 113, 405,
 405
 Helvetica (sans serif font), 89, 544
 \hfill (space fill com.), 106, 126, 131, 414
 \Hfootnotename (hyperref redef. name),
 323
 \hfuzz (\hbox warning adjustment), 96
 hhline (pack.), 140, 313
 hierarchy of structural commands, 252, 466
 history of *AMS-L_TE_X*, *AMS-T_EX*, T_EX, and
 L^AT_EX, 521–525
 \hline (table com.), 135, 137
 Høgholm, Morten, 206
 \hom (hom math op.), 172, 510
 \hookleftarrow (\hookleftarrow math arrow), 507
 \hookrightarrow (\hookrightarrow math arrow), 507
 horizontal lines (rules), in **tabular**
 environments, 135, 137
 horizontal spacing, 313
 adjusting, 188
 commands
 \ (interword space), 11, 66, 70, 102,
 190, 520
- \! (negthinspace), 182, 190, 190, 513,
 520
 \ (thinspace), 25, 67, 75, 188, 190,
 190, 513, 520
 \ (medspace), 190, 513, 520
 \ (thickspace), 190, 513, 520
 \ (intersentence space), 520
 \dotfill (fill com.), 106
 \frenchspacing, 67
 \dotsfor (fill com.), 186, 233, 235
 \hfill (fill com.), 106, 126, 131, 414
 \rulefill (fill com.), 106, 113
 \hspace, 102, 142
 \hspace*, 69, 103–104
 \medspace, 190, 513, 520
 \mspace, 190, 190, 513
 \negmedspace, 190, 513, 520
 \negthickspace, 190, 513, 520
 \negthinspace, 182, 190, 190, 513,
 520
 \nobreakspace, 76
 \nonfrenchspacing, 67
 \phantom, 102–103, 191–192, 223, 406
 \quad, 27, 102, 105, 190, 190, 224,
 513, 520
 \quad, 24, 27, 102, 105, 154, 190, 190,
 225, 513, 520
 \thickspace, 190, 513, 520
 \thinspace, 25, 67, 75, 188, 190, 190,
 513, 520
 to avoid using, 481
 \xspace, 368–369
 in math, 19, 154–156, 187–192, 233, 236
 in text, 11, 64–67, 102–104, 114, 126, 414,
 513, 520
 intersentence, 11, 64–67
 interword space (.), 11, 64–67, 70, 76,
 102, 383, 427
 preventing removal of, 103
 howpublished (BIBT_EX database field), 425
 \href (hyperref com.), 323
 \rulefill (space fill com.), 106, 113
 \hslash (h̄ math sym.), 508
 \hspace (spacing com.), 102, 142
 \hspace* (spacing com.), 69, 103–104
 HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol), 538
 \huge (font size com.), 93, 93, 517
 \huge (font size com.), 93, 93, 517
 \hyperlink (beamer com.), 344
 hyperlinks, 319
 in PDF files, 319–323
 increasing size of, 322
 suppressing, 322
 to bibliographic citations, 321
 to Web sites, 322–323

- in presentations, 343–347, 358
 putting bookmarks in documents, 321
 to bibliographic citations, 321
 with `hyperref` pack., 320, 321, 320–322
- `hyperref` (pack.), 320–323
 bookmarks file (`out`), 321
 commands
 `\autoref`, 320, 320, 322, 323
 `\pageref`, 322
 `\ref`, 322
 `\urladdr`, 323
 `\WriteBookmarks`, 322
 documentation for, 320
 options, 320
 `bookmarks=true`, 320, 321
 `colorlinks`, 320, 321, 321
 `dvipdf`, 320
 `dvipdfm`, 320
 `dvipdfmx`, 320
 `dviips`, 320
 `dviipsone`, 320
 `dviwindo`, 320
 `hypertex`, 320
 `pagebackref`, 320, 321, 321
 `pdftex`, 320
 `ps2pdf`, 320
 `tex4ht`, 320
 `textures`, 320
 `vtxe`, 320
- `hypertex` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 320
 Hypertext Transfer Protocol, *see* HTTP
`hyphen.tex`, 82
 hyphenation, 13, 82–85, 530
 determined by optional hyphen, 82
 displaying, 84
 \LaTeX 's algorithm, 79, 82
 of German text, 13, 548
 of hyphenated words, 13
 of words with accents, 82
 preventing, 83–84, 107
 rules for English, 85
 specifying, 82
 tables, 528
- `\hyphenation`, 82
 hyphens, 14, 62, 75
 key, 9, 63
 optional, 13, 82, 82, 96, 483
 unbreakable, 83
- I**
`\i` (i dotless i), 79, 79, 516
`\idotsint` ($\int \cdots \int$ large math op.), 161, 175, 511
`\idx` (index aux. file), 459, 460, 461, 464
- `\iff` (\iff math arrow), 365, 507
`\ignorespacesafterend` (spacing com.), 383
`\iiint` (\iiint large math op.), 161, 175, 511
`\iiint` (\iiint large math op.), 161, 175, 511
`\aint` (\aint large math op.), 161, 175, 511
`\ilg` (*MakeIndex* log files), 461
 illustrations, 258, 259–260
 commands for, 479, 496
 double-column, 259
 Encapsulated PostScript (EPS), 39, 259, 476, 483, 496
`\graphicx` (pack.), 250, 259
 placement of, 102, 260
 portability of, 552
 Portable Document Format (PDF), 39, 259, 476, 496, 552
 preparation of, 483
 sample files, 39, 54, 327
 scaling, 54, 259
 with `graphicx` (pack.), 37
 with the `picture` environment, 259
`\Im` (\Im math sym.), 508
`\imath` (\imath math sym.), 508
 implementations, \LaTeX , *see* \LaTeX
 implementations
`\in` (\in binary rel.), 503
`\in` (inch abs. unit), 12, 15, 96, 105, 107, 111, 403
`\inbibl.tpl` (sample file), 263
`\INBOOK` (bibl. entry type), 424, 436
`\inch` (in abs. unit), 12, 15, 96, 105, 107, 111, 403
`\include` (inclusion com.), 392, 477, 478
 and auxiliary files, 531
 and counters, 400
 errors with, 478
 files start on new pages, 478
`\includegraphics` (graphics com.), 54, 260, 327, 479, 496
 file extensions in, 259, 496
 in presentations, 341, 342
`\includeonly` (preamble inclusion com.), 400, 477, 478
 including
 files in other files, 386, 392
 fonts
 in PDF files, 318
 in PostScript files, 317
 graphics in documents, 259–260
`\INCcollection` (bibl. entry type), 424, 431
 incrementing counters, 399
`\ind` (proc. index files), 459, 460, 461, 487
`\indent` (indentation com.), 99

- indentation
 - hanging, **99–100**, 145
 - in `multiline` and `multline*` environments, 213
 - in source files, 166
 - of environment bodies, 155
 - of first lines of paragraphs, 99, 313, **404**
 - of subformulas, 217
 - of text, 99–100
 - customizing, 103
 - forcing, 99
 - preventing, 99
- `indentfirst` (pack.), 313
- `\index` (indexing com.), 371, 450, **450, 453–459**
 - at signs (@) in, 455, 456
 - defining cross-references in indexes with, 457
 - double quote ("') in, 457
 - encapsulators, 454, 455
 - exclamation marks (!) in, 453, 454, 457
 - modifiers, 454, 455
 - page ranges in, 455
 - placement of commands, **458**, 486
 - spaces in argument of, 462
 - syntax of, 458
 - vertical line (|) in, 454, 457
- indexes, 311, **452, 449–464**
 - appear in back matter, 450
 - auxiliary files (`idx`), **459, 461**
 - cross-references in, 457
 - defining, *see* indexing
 - entries
 - sorting, 455–456
 - stored in `idx` files, **459, 461**
 - log files (`ilg`), 461
 - main entries, 267, 449, **453**
 - multiple, 463–464
 - placement of, **450**, 461
 - processed files (`ind`), **459–461**, 487
 - processing, 459–461
 - sample, 452, 450–452
 - simple, 267
 - special characters in, 457
 - subentries, 267, 449, **453**
 - subsubentries, 267, 449, **454**
 - syntax of, 458
 - typesetting, 459–461
 - using `showidx`, **453**
 - vertical space in, 267, 449
- indexing, *see also* `MakeIndex`, 449–464
 - commands for, 267, 371, **449–459**, 461
 - CTAN systems for, 539
 - entries
 - main, 267, 449, **453**
- subentries, 267, 449, **453**
- subsubentries, 267, 449, **454**
- environment for, 267, 407, 449, 459
- page ranges, 454–455
- placement of commands for, 458
- processed files (`ind`), 487
- processed index files (`ind`), **459–461**
- rules for, 462–463
- typesetting entries in margins, 311
- with AMS document classes, 450
- with user-defined commands, 371
- `\indexname` (redef. name), 376
- `\indexspace` (indexing com.), 449
- `\inf` (inf math op.), **172, 299, 510**
- information, top matter
 - AMS specific, 279–281
 - AMS subject classifications, 279
 - keywords, 280, 297
 - author, 275–279, 304
 - addresses, 44, 277, 296
 - current addresses, 277, 281
 - e-mail addresses, 278, 281, 296
 - Internet addresses, 278, 281, 296
 - research support, 44, 279, 281, 296, 304
 - for articles, 37–38, 273–285
 - author names, 276, 296, 304
 - dedications, 275
 - title, 273, 297, 304
 - translator, 274
- `\infty` (∞ math sym.), 20, **508**
- `\initex` (TeX program), 528
- initials
 - periods in, 67
 - typographical rules for, 67
- `\injlim` (inj lim math op.), **172**
- inline
 - fractions, 158
 - math formulas, *see* inline math environments
 - tables, 133
- inline math environments, **17, 152**
 - `\(`` (start math mode), 18, 74, **152**
 - `\)`` (end math mode), 18, 74, **152**
 - act as special braces, 152, 153
 - and \$, 17, 18, 33, 74, 152, **152**
 - display-style binomials in, 158
 - font size of, 199
 - `math`, 152
 - matrices in, 235
 - size of delimiters in, 170
- `\INPROCEEDINGS` (bibl. entry type), 424, 430–431
- `\input` (inclusion com.), 528
- `\inputenc` (pack.), 547
- `\institute` (beamer com.), 326

- institution** (BIB \TeX database field), 425
instructions to L \TeX , *see also commands and environments*, 7, 11, 35, 48, 63, 67, 248, 252, 534
\int (\int large math op.), 25, 175, 511
integrals, 25, 161, 299
integration of fonts into L \TeX , 523, 543
interactive mode, 113, 376–378, 491, 534–535
\intercal (\top math op.), 506
intercolumn spacing, 209, 220, 220
 in aligned math environments, 224, 228
 in **tabular** environments, 136
interline spacing, 242
 adjusting, 95, 98–99, 104
international T \TeX users groups, 537
Internet, 278, 322, 415, 538
 addresses, 279, 323
 in top matter (**\urladdr** com.), 278, 279, 296, 323
 and L \TeX , 537–542
 browsers, 538, 540
 FTP transfers, 538
 viewing PDF files in, 318
 documents in PostScript format, 317
 finding L \TeX and T \TeX related material on, 537
 finding L \TeX - and T \TeX -related material on, 538
 hyperlinks in PDF documents, 319, 323
 L \TeX and T \TeX resources on, 538, 542
 putting L \TeX documents on, 317–323
 types of sites for downloading files, 538
intersentence spaces ($\text{ \ }.$), 11, 64–67, 520
 and **\frenchspacing**, 67
 and **\nonfrenchspacing**, 67
\intertext (text in math com.), 226–227
interword space, 11, 64–67, 76, 383, 427
 and **\frenchspacing**, 67
 and **\nonfrenchspacing**, 67
 command (_), 11, 66, 70, 102, 190, 520
intlimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), 299
intrart.tex (sample file), 35–43, 53, 55, 326, 331
 typeset, 41–43
intrarti.idx (index entry file), 459, 460, 461
intrarti.ilg (index log file), 461
intrarti.ind (index proc. file), 459–461
intrarti.tex (sample file), 450–452, 460, 459–461
intropres.tex (sample file), 53, 55, 57–58
invalid characters, 9, 63
inverse search, *see synchronization*
invisible boxes, *see struts*
invoking
 delimited commands, 378
 proclamations, 37, 46, 52, 125, 128, 343, 384
 user-defined commands, 366
\iota (ι Greek char.), 502
ISBN (bibl. com.), 425
\it (obs. L \TeX 2.09 font com.), 94
italic correction, 91–93, 520
 and commas, 92
 and **\em**, 92
 and font commands, 90, 92
 and **\itshape**, 92
 and periods, 92
 and **\slshape**, 92
 suppressing, 92
 with two-letter font commands, 95
italics
 bold math, 197
 font shape, 14, 28, 68, 88, 90, 91, 94, 123, 412, 516
 in math mode, 196, 196, 512
 math font, 196
\item (list item com.), 118–123
 and square brackets, 122
 in simple indexes, 267, 449
 optional arguments of, 120, 122, 409, 410
\itemindent (length com.), 407, 408
\itemize (text list env.), 118, 119
\Itemname (*hyperref* redef. name), 323
\itemsep (length com.), 407, 413
\itshape (font shape com. dec.), 90, 91, 94, 123, 412, 516
 and italic correction, 92
\itshape (font shape env.), 123

J
\j (\jmath dotless j), 79, 79, 516
Jackowski, Boguslaw, 525
Java, with BIB \TeX , 447
JavaScript, 318
Jeffrey, Alan, 523
Jensen, Frank, 403
\jmath (\jmath math sym.), 508
\Join (\bowtie binary rel.), 503
Jones, David M., 447, 524
journal (BIB \TeX database field), 425
Jr. in bibliographic entries, 426
jump to a line productivity tool, 6, 494, 498
justification of text
 left, 8
 right, 8, 14, 68

K
\k (ogonek Eur. accent), 519
\kappa (κ Greek char.), 502
\ker (ker math op.), 172, 510

- Kern, Uwe, 325, 348, 349, 559
 kerning, 529, 530
 key (BIBTEX database field), 425
 keyboard, 8–9, 11, **62–64**, 547
 equivalents, 494, 499
 keys, 17
 alphanumeric, 8–9
 arrow, 53
 Enter, *see* Return key
 Esc (escape), 63, 365
 letter, 8–9, **62**
 math symbol, 63
 math typing, 17
 modifier, 62, 63
 number, 62
 prohibited, 9, 63
 Return, 9, 11, 63
 space bar, 9, 11, 53, 63, 325, 334
 special, 9, 17, **63**, 76
 Tab, 9, 11, 63
 keys, sorting (in `\index` commands), 455–456
 case sensitivity of, 462
`\keywords` (top matter com.), 297
 rules for using, 280
`\keywords` (bibl. com.), 425
`\keywordsname` (redef. name), 376
`\kill` (tabbing com.), 141, 142
 Knuth, Donald E., xxix, 363, 521–523, 525,
 528, 539, 553, 559
`koi8-u` (font encoding), 548
- L**
- L, slashed (`\L`, `\l`), *81*, **515**
- `\label` (cross-ref. com.), 28, 29, 31, 50, 156,
 215, 231, 252, **255**, 328
 and simple indexes, 267
 arguments of, 29, 257
 assigning counters to, 402
 in `table` environments, 259
 placement of commands, 486
 rules for, 257
 showing in margin, 257, 313
 with `\``, 215
- labels
- for `\bibitem` commands, 263
 - for bibliographic items, 48, 121
 - for equations, 255
 - for groups of equations, 204
 - in list environments, 121, **121**
 - of items in a `list` environment, 408, **409**, 410
 - setting with `\label`, 255
- `\labelsep` (length com.), 407, 408
`\labelwidth` (length com.), 407, 408
`\Lambda` (Greek char.), 502
`\lambda` (λ Greek char.), 502
 Lamport, Leslie, xxix, 403, 522, 523, 529, 552,
 559
`\land` (∧ math op.), 506
`\landscape` (doc. class opt.), 307
`\langle` (⟨ math delimiter), *167*, **168**, 509
`\language` (BIBTEX database field), 425
`\Large` (font size com.), **93**, *93*, **517**
`\Large` (font size com.), **93**, *93*, **94**, **517**
 large
 math delimiters
 in `array` subsidiary math environment,
 313
 operators, 25, **26**, 161, *175*, **174–176**, **511**
 limits of, **174**, 299
 sizing of math delimiters with, 169
 symbols, 117, 227–230
`\large` (font size com.), **93**, *93*, **517**
`\larger` (font size com.), **94**
`\LaTeX`, **521**, 525
 and the Internet, 537–542
 counters, 399
 customizing, 363–417
 distribution, 78, 86, **310–313**, 489, 525,
 528, **529**, 532, 534, 539, 540
 components of, 303–308
 directories, 257, **310–311**, 312, 540,
 547, 553
 on CTAN, 540
 document classes, *see under* document
 classes
 document structure, 247–270, 467
 documentation for, 311, 552
 packages, 312
 documents, 247–270
 printing and viewing, 530
 putting on the Internet, 317–323
 files created by, 531–534
 files, portability of, 9
 font substitution, 94, 318, 484
 formats, 529
 history of, 521–525
 implementations, xxvi, 3, 5, 311, 318, 326,
 525, 537
 discussion groups, 542
 for Mac, 3, 326, 489, 495–499
 PC, 3
 for PC, 326, 489–494
 productivity tools, 5, 494, 498
 technical support for, 541–542
 UNIX, 3, 442, 461, 489
 inner workings of, 528–534
 layers of, 528–529
 localization of, 79, 547–548
 numbers stored by, 80

- omissions in discussion of, 551–552
 overview of, 521–536
packages, *see under packages*
 release dates of, 86, 251, 532
 resources on the Internet, 542
 source files, *see under source files*
 spacing in text, 11
 structure of, 525, 526
 updates to, 532
 using, 525, 527
 versions of, 532–534
 specifying, in documents, 86, 250, 386, 532
 writing books with, 465–487
`\tex` (\LaTeX distr. directory), 499
`\LaTeX` (\LaTeX logo com.), 8, 80
 $\text{\LaTeX} 2.09$, 386, 522–524
 font names, 313
 two-letter font commands, 94, 94
 $\text{\LaTeX} 2\varepsilon$, *see* \LaTeX
`\tex.ltx`, 311
 $\text{\LaTeX} 3$, 523, 524, 541
`\LaTeXe` ($\text{\LaTeX} 2\varepsilon$ logo com.), 80, 524
`\texsym` (pack.), 37, 180, 249, 294, 300, 311
 layers, of \TeX and \TeX , 528–529
 layout
 of a list, 408
 of Computer Modern typewriter font, 78, 78
 of pages, 268–270, 313, 525
`\layout` (page-layout diagram com.), 268
`\layout` (pack.), 268, 313
`\lbrace` ({ math delimiter), 167, 509
`\lbrack` ([math delimiter), 167, 509
`\lceil` (⌈ math delimiter), 167, 509
`\ldots`
 in math, 160, 186
 in text, 24
`\le` (≤ binary rel.), 503
`\leadsto` (↝ math arrow), 507
`\left` (math delim.), 167–168, 170, 184, 235
 blank, 168, 182
 must be balanced, 168, 217
 left double quote (“)
 text symbol, 75, 81, 518
 typing, 11
 left justification of text, 8
 left single quote (‘)
 key, 9, 11, 62, 75
 text symbol, 75, 519
`\left(` ((math delimiter), 24, 26, 166, 168, 184, 217, 235
`\left.` (blank math delim.), 168, 182
`\left<` (< math delimiter), 168
`\left[` ([math delimiter), 24, 166, 182
`\Leftarrow` (⇐ math arrow), 507
`\leftarrow` (← math arrow), 364, 374, 507
`\leftarrowtail` (⟵ math arrow), 507
`\leftharpoondown` (⟵ math arrow), 507
`\leftharpoonup` (⟵ math arrow), 507
`\leftleftarrows` (⊐ math arrow), 507
`\leftmargin` (length com.), 407, 408, 411
`\Leftrightarrow` (↔ math arrow), 507
`\leftrightarrow` (↔ math arrow), 507
`\leftrightarrow` (↔ math arrow), 507
`\leftrightharpoons` (⊑ math arrow), 507
`\leftrightsquigarrow` (~~ math arrow), 507
`\leftroot` (root-adjustment com.), 162
`\leftthreetimes` (⊓ math op.), 506
`\left|` (| math delimiter), 24, 26, 168, 180, 189, 191
 legacy
 document classes, 54, 118, 249, 254, 263, 273, 302, 305, 303–313, 529
 documents, 319
 environments, 123, 143–145, 407
 quotation, 144
 quote, 143
 verse, 144
`\legacy-article.tex` (sample file), 304, 305
`\legalpaper` (doc. class opt.), 85, 298, 306
 Lehman, Philipp, 447
 lemmas, *see* proclamations
 length commands, 108, 270, 398, 403–406
 and boxes, 405
 arithmetic with, 312, 405
`\baselineskip`, 95, 101
`\baselinestretch`, 99
 defining new, 404
`\depth`, 108, 108, 111
`\fboxrule`, 110
`\fboxsep`, 110
`\hangafter`, 100
`\hangindent`, 99
`\height`, 108, 108, 111
 in list environments, 407
`\itemindent`, 407, 408
`\itemsep`, 407, 413
`\labelsep`, 407, 408
`\labelwidth`, 407, 408
`\leftmargin`, 407, 408, 411
`\listparindent`, 407, 408, 414
`\marginparpush`, 404
`\marginparwidth`, 113
`\medskipamount`, 377, 406
`\multlinegap`, 213
`\oddsidemargin`, 270
`\overfullrule`, 96
`\parindent`, 404, 414

- length commands (*continued*)

 `\parsep`, 407, 408, 413, 414

 `\parskip`, 404, 407, 408, 414, 481

 `\partopsep`, 407

 `\rightmargin`, 407, 408, 411

 `setting`, 99, 100, 113, 404–406

 `\textwidth`, 270, 398, 404

 `\topsep`, 407, 408

 `\totalheight`, 108, 108, 110, 111

 `\width`, 108, 108, 111
- lengths, rubber, *see* rubber lengths

 `\leq` (\leq binary rel.), 503

 `leqno` (doc. class opt.), 298, 307

 `\leqq` (\leqq binary rel.), 504

 `\leqslant` (\leqslant binary rel.), 504

 less than (<)

 as binary relation, 503

 text symbol, 81, 518

 `\lessapprox` (\lessapprox binary rel.), 504

 `\lessdot` (\lessdot binary rel.), 504

 `\lesseqgtr` (\lesseqgtr binary rel.), 504

 `\lesseqgtr` (\lesseqgtr binary rel.), 504

 `\lessgtr` (\lessgtr binary rel.), 504

 `\lessim` (\lessim binary rel.), 504

 `letter` (doc. class), 308–310, 529

 `letter` (letter env.), 308–310

 argument of, 309

 breaking lines in, 309

 errors with, 309

 `letter keys`, 8–9, 62

 `letter.tex` (sample file), 308–310

 `letterpaper` (doc. class opt.), 298, 306

letters

 counter style, 401

 Greek, 181, 389–390, 502

 Hebrew, 501

Levy, Silvio, 553, 560

`\lfloor` (lfloor math delimiter), 167, 509

`\lg` (lg math op.), 172, 510

`\lhd` (\lhd math op.), 506

ligatures, 79

 suppressing, 79, 181, 365

`\lim` (lim math op.), 172, 510

`\liminf` (lim inf math op.), 172, 510

limits

 as subscripts, 25, 161, 171–174, 182, 299

 as superscripts, 25, 161, 174, 182, 299

 large operators with, 25, 27, 161, 174, 174, 175, 299, 511

 multiline, 176

 operators with, 171, 172, 299, 510

 placement of, 299

`\limits` (limit-control com.), 161, 174

`\limsup` (lim sup math op.), 172, 510
- line boxes, *see under* boxes

line ending characters, 63–65, 68, 84, 102

 commenting out, 84, 85, 458

 on Mac, PCs, and UNIX systems, 9

 translation of, 63

line numbers, in error messages, 6, 9, 153, 154

`\linebreak` (line breaking com.), 484, 486

`\linebreak` (line-breaking com.), 97, 97

 optional arguments of, 98

lines

 adding to

 lists of figures and tables, 476

 tables of contents, 473–474

 blank

 in displayed math environments, 51, 153, 157, 215

 in inline math environments, 153

 in text environments, 118

 in top matter commands, 273

 in `verbatim` environments, 146

 terminating paragraphs with, 11, 64, 99, 118, 144

 breaking, 15

 preventing, 99

 with \\, 25, 30, 31, 33, 44, 46, 98, 124, 135, 141, 142, 145, 176, 211, 213, 215, 216, 227, 231, 242, 273–278, 297, 304, 309, 358

 distance between, 104

 adjusting, 114

 filling with space or dots, 106, 113, 126, 186, 233, 235, 414

 separating

 with \\, 25, 30, 31, 33, 44, 46, 98, 124, 135, 141, 142, 145, 176, 211, 213, 215, 216, 227, 231, 242, 273–278, 297, 304, 309, 358

 with `\linebreak`, 97, 97, 484, 486

 stretchable, 179

 too wide warnings, 12–13

 wrapping, 84

lines (rules)

 horizontal

 filling lines with, 106, 113

 in `tabular` environments, 135, 137

 intersecting in tables, 140, 313

 vertical

 in CD environments, 241

 in `tabular` environments, 135

links, hyper, *see* hyperlinks

Linux, 3, *see also* UNIX, 554

`list` (list text env.), 118, 406, 408, 409–414

 arguments of, 410

 length commands in, 407

 using counters with, 411

- list text environments, *see also* specific environments, **118–123**
 description, **120**
 enumerate, **119**, 123
 in proclamations, 126
 itemize, **119**
 list, **118**
 mixing, 121
 nesting, 121
 rules for, 120
 trivlist, 414
 \listfigurename (redef. name), **375**, 376
 \listfiles (file list com.), **387**, 532, **533**
 listing files used by a document, **387**, 533
 \listoffigures (front matter com.), **475**, 532
 \listoftables (front matter com.), **475**, 532
 \listparindent (length com.), **407**, 408, **414**
 lists
 cross-referencing items in, 119, 123
 custom
 and counters, 410
 defining, 406–415
 environments for, *see* list text environments
 in presentations, 339–341
 of figures, 475–476
 adding a line to, 476
 auxiliary file (*l_of*), **475**, 487, **532**
 fragile commands in, 74
 of tables, 134, **475–476**
 adding a line to, 476
 auxiliary file (*l_ot*), **475**, 487, **532**
 fragile commands in, 74
 \listtablename (redef. name), **376**
 \ll (≪ binary rel.), **503**
 \llcorner (⊓ math delimiter), **167**, 509
 \Lleftarrow (≪ math arrow), **507**
 \lll (≪≪ binary rel.), **504**
 \ln (ln math op.), **172**, 510
 \lnapprox (≈ neg. binary rel.), **505**
 \lneq (≤ neg. binary rel.), **505**
 \lneqq (≲ neg. binary rel.), **505**
 \lnot (¬ math sym.), **508**
 \lnsim (≷ neg. binary rel.), **505**
 local commands, *see under* scope
 localization, of L^AT_EX, 547–548
 locating errors, 87
 location of BIB^TE_X database and style files, 439
 l_of (list of figures file), **475**, 476, 487, **532**
 \log (log math op.), **172**, 510
 log (L^AT_EX log file), 5, 5, 9, 12, 29, 84, 96, 378, 386, 441, 475, 493, 499, **526**, **531**, 533
 error and warning messages recorded in, 12, 96
 log files
 for BIB^TE_X, *see* b_lg
 for indexes, *see* ilg
 for L^AT_EX, *see* log
 log-like functions, *see* operators
 logical
 design, 52–53
 of books, 479–481
 units, 11, 35–41, 46, 48, 49, 51, 52, 66, 68, 164, 248, **252–255**, 261, 267, 285, 304, 308–310, 406, 437, 442, 449, 459, **466–467**, 522, 536
 hierarchy of, 252
 numbering of, **403**, **466**
 numbering of proclamations within, 128
 logos, 80
 long commands, 73
 \Longleftarrow (≪ math arrow), **507**
 \longleftarrow (← math arrow), **507**
 \Longleftrightarrow (≪⇒ math arrow), **507**
 \longmapsto (→ math arrow), **507**
 \Longrightarrow (⇒ math arrow), **507**
 \longrightarrow (→ math arrow), **507**
 \longtable (pack.), 313
 \looparrowleft (←↑ math arrow), **507**
 \looparrowright (↑→ math arrow), **507**
 \lrcorner (⊓ math delimiter), **167**, 509
 \lsh (↑ math arrow), **507**
 \ltimes (× math op.), **506**
 lot (list of tables files), **475**, 487, **532**
 low-level font commands, 95
 for NFSS, 552
 lowercase counter styles
 letters (\alpha), **401**
 roman numerals (\roman), 123, **401**
 lowline (⊓ text symbol), 77, 81, **518**
 \lozenge (◊ math sym.), **508**
 \lrcorner (⊓ math delimiter), **167**, 509
 \Lsh (↑ math arrow), **507**
 \ltimes (× math op.), **506**
 L^AT_EX, 554
 Lucida Bright, 543, 546
 lucidabr (pack.), 546
 lucidabr.dtx (PSNFSS distr. file), 546
 lucidabr.fdd (PSNFSS distr. file), 546
 lucidabr.ins (PSNFSS distr. file), 546
 lucidabr.sty (PSNFSS distr. file), 546
 lucidabr.yy (PSNFSS distr. file), 546
 \lVert (|| math delimiter), 168
 \lvert (| math delimiter), 168
 \lvertneqq (≲ neg. binary rel.), **505**
 LY1 (pack. opt.), 545, 546

M

- Mac, *see* Macintosh
 line ending characters, 9

- Macintosh, xxvi, 3, 4, 9, 319, 479, 489, 522
 editing cycle with, 498
 FTP clients, 538
 \LaTeX implementations, 3, 326, 489,
 495–499
 OS X, 554
 spelling checkers, 495
 TeXShop \LaTeX front end, xxvi, 9, 11, 53,
 326, 442, 461, 496, 498
 macron (‘ text accent), 79, 516
 macros, *see* commands and user-defined
 commands
 main entries, in indexes, 267, 449, 450, 453,
 456, 457
 main matter, 249, 251–261, 467
 \mainmatter (struct. com.), 467
 \makebox (box com.), 107, 108, 109, 111, 113
 \makeglos (pack.), 464
 \makeglossary (preamble glossary com.),
 464, 531
 \makeidx (pack.), 311, 450, 478
 \MakeIndex, 77, 268, 449–464, 532
 and font commands, 90
 \maketitle (title-page com.), 37, 44, 46, 54,
 248, 249, 469
 and abstracts, 251, 285, 306
 and page styles, 270
 MANUAL (bibl. entry type), 424, 436
 manuals, in BIB \TeX database files, 436
 manuscripts
 in BIB \TeX database files, 435–436
 preparing for publication, 465
 \mapsto (\rightarrow math arrow), 507
 \mapstochar (\rightarrow math arrow), 507
 marginal comments, 112–113, 484
 in double-sided documents, 112
 in equations, 112
 in multiline math environments, 112
 space between, 404
 width of paragraph box for, 113
 \marginpar (marginal comment com.), 112
 in double-sided documents, 112
 \marginparpush (length com.), 404
 \marginparwidth (length com.), 113
 margins, 404, 407
 of nested lists, 407
 showing symbolic references in, 257, 313
 \markboth (left and right page header com.),
 268
 arguments of, 268
 \markleft (left page header com.), 270, 281
 \markright (right page header com.), 268
 master document, 477–479
 MASTERSTHESIS (bibl. entry type), 425,
 433–434
 math, 7
 accents, 25, 176–178, 183, 185, 301, 377,
 483
 alphabets, 180–182, 185, 196, 195–197,
 301, 390, 512
 arrows, 179, 187, 240, 507
 as delimiters, 166, 167, 168
 stretchable, 179, 240–242
 vertical, 241
 binary operations, *see* binary operations
 binary relations, *see* binary relations
 characters, 17, 63
 commands, *see* math commands
 environments, 152–154
 aligned, *see under* aligned
 and \verb commands, 148
 blank lines in, 153, 157
 displayed, *see* displayed math
 environments
 inline, *see* inline math environments
 multiline, 215–219, 333
 page breaks in, 242
 spaces in, 153
 fonts, 195–197
 blackboard bold, 181, 197, 390, 512
 bold, 184, 196, 197, 390, 512
 bold italic, 196
 calligraphic, 185, 197, 301, 390, 512
 Euler Fraktur, 180, 197, 301, 302, 390,
 512
 Euler Script, 301, 390, 512, 512
 italic, 196, 196, 512
 roman, 196, 196, 512
 sans serif, 196, 196, 512
 size of, 199
 typewriter, 196, 196, 512
 mode, *see* math mode
 multiline, 207–243
 Visual Guide to, 207, 208
 operators, 22, 24, 26, 157, 172, 170–176,
 371, 506, 510
 declaring, 173
 large, 25, 26, 161, 169, 175, 174–176,
 299, 511
 with limits, 25, 27, 161, 171, 172, 174,
 175, 299, 510, 511
 subscripts and superscripts, 199
 symbol alphabets, 197
 blackboard bold, 197
 calligraphic, 197
 Euler Fraktur, 197
 Greek, 197
 symbols, *see* math symbols
 text in, 19, 27, 83, 99, 107, 154, 162–163,
 181, 196, 226–227, 241, 301

- specifying fonts for, 163
 typing, 17–33, 151–206
- `math` (inline math env.), 152
 math arrows, 179, 187, 240
 as delimiters, 166, 167, **168**, 509
 stretchable, **179**, 240–242
 vertical, 241
- math commands, 23, 27, 160, 161, 176, 191, 194, 200, 204
 for alignment of formulas, 214
- math delimiters, **24**, 26, 167, **166–170**, 180–184, 186, 188, 189, 191, 217, 235, 509
 and large operators, 169
 arrows, 166
 balancing, 168, 182, 217
 blank, 168, 182
 fixed-size, 168
 for grouping, 169
 in inline math environments, 170
 in `smallmatrix` subsidiary math environments, 235
 large, in `array` subsidiary math environment, 313
 left bracket ([), 24, 166, 182
 right bracket (]), 24, 166, 182
 specifying size of, **168**, 184
 stretchable, 167–168
 with `matrix` variants, 234–235
- math font commands, *see also* font command declarations and font commands
 for bold
 `\boldsymbol`, 184, 197, **198**, 301, 512
 `\mathbb`, 181, **197**, 512
 `\mathbf`, 184, **196**, 196, **197**, 512
 `\pmb`, **198–199**, 301
 for italics
 `\mathit`, **196**, 196, 512
 for series
 `\mathnormal`, **196**, 196, 512
 for shape
 `\mathcal`, 185, **197**, 512
 `\mathfrak`, 180, **197**, 301, 302, 512
 `\mathrm`, 196, 512
 `\mathscr`, **301**, 512, 512
 `\mathsf`, **196**, 196, 512
 `\mathtt`, **196**, 196, 512
 for size
 `\displaystyle`, **199**, 204
 `\scriptscriptstyle`, **199**, 204
 `\scriptstyle`, **199**, 204
 `\textstyle`, **199**, 204
 for weight
 `\boldsymbol`, 184, 197, **198**, 301, 512
 `\mathbf`, 184, **196**, 196, **197**, 512
 `\pmb`, **198–199**, 301
- math mode, 7, **62**, 76, 147, 154, 163, 170, 171, 173, 199, 369, 375, 392
 math symbols, 19, 20, 63, 131, 177, 182, 240, 249, 294, 311, 501–513
 alphabets, **197**
 and delimiters, 24, 166, 168
 bold, **197–199**, 301, 312
 building new, 183, **192–195**, 372
 classification of, **188–189**, 195
 declaring types of, 195
 end of proof, 113, 374
 in text, 365
 large, 227–229
 negated, 194–195
 shorthand commands for, 364
 side-setting, 194–195
 sizes of, 199
 spacing of, 187–192
 stacking, 192–193
 stretchable, 178–180
 suppressing, 131
 math units, *see* mu
`math.tex` (sample file), 17–19
`mathb.tex` (sample file), 19–22
`\mathbb{X}`, 181, **197**, 512
`\mathbf` (math font weight com.), 184, **196**, **197**, 512
`\mathbin` (binary-op. com.), 195
`\mathcal{X}`, 185, **197**, 512
 and Euler Script, 301
Mathematical Reviews, 159
`\mathfrak{X}`, 180, **197**, 301, 302, 512
`\mathit` (math font shape com.), **196**, 196, 512
`\mathnormal` (math font shape com.), **196**, 196, 512
`\mathrel` (binary-rel. def. com.), 195
`\mathring{x}` (math accent), 177, 512
`\mathrm` (math font shape com.), 196, 512
`\mathscr` (opt. of `eucal` pack.), **301**, 386, 390, 512
`\mathscr{X}` (math font shape com.), **301**, 512, 512
`\mathsf` (math font shape com.), **196**, 196, 512
`\mathstrut` (spacing com.), 114, 200
MathTime, 545
 installing, 545
`\mathtt` (pack.), 545
`\mathtime.dtx` (PSNFSS distr. file), 545
`\mathtime.ins` (PSNFSS distr. file), 545
`\mathtime.sty` (PSNFSS distr. file), 545
`\mathtools` (pack.), 206
`\mathtt` (math font shape com.), **196**, 196, 512
`\mathversion`, 198
 matrices, 25–26, 232–238
 in inline math environments, 235

- matrix** (subsid. math env.), 25–26, 208, 210, 231, **232–238**
 variants, 234–235
- \max** (max math op.), 172, **510**
- MaxMatrixCols** (counter), 233
- \mbox** (box com.), xxvi, 107
- McLean, Ruari, 553, 559
- McPherson, Kent, 268
- \mdseries** (font weight com. dec.), 90, **93, 516**
- \measuredangle** (\angle math sym.), 508
- measurements, of text boxes, **405, 405**
 commands for, 406
- medium (font weight), 89, 90, 93, **516**
- \medskip** (spacing com.), **104**
- \medskipamount** (length com.), 377, **406**
- \medspace** (spacing com.), **190, 513, 520**
- messages
 error, *see* error messages
 warning, *see* warning messages
- Metafont, 539
- metrics, font, *see* font metrics
- \mho** (\mathcal{U} math sym.), **508**
- Microsoft
 typography web page, 546
 Vista, 555
 Windows, *see also* PCs, 446, 554
- \mid** (| binary rel.), **170, 181, 189, 190, 503**
- midpoint (- text sym.), **81, 518**
- MiK $\mathrm{\TeX}$ (Windows L $\mathrm{\TeX}$ front end), xxvi, 326, 490–491, 494
 discussion groups, 542
- millimeter (mm abs. unit), 403
- \min** (min math op.), 172, 299, **510**
- \minipage** (text box env.), 107, 109, 112, 383, 384
 displaying footnotes in, 112
- minus (–), 9, 22, 63, 76, 157, 188, 191, 192, 196, 216–218
 as binary operation, 506
- mirrors, of CTAN, 540
- MISC (bibl. entry type), 425, **436**
- Mittelbach, Frank, xxxiii, 101, 523, 524, 558, 559
- mixing list text environments, 121
- mm (millimeter abs. unit), 403
- \mod** (mod math op.), **173, 174**
- \models** (= binary rel.), **503**
- modes
 interactive, 113, 376–378, 491, **534–535**
 quiet, 534
- typographic
 math, *see also* inline and displayed math environments, 7, **62, 76, 147, 154, 163, 170, 171, 173, 199, 369, 375, 392**
 text, 7, **62, 63, 154, 181, 369, 375, 392**
- modifier keys, 62, 63
- modifiers, in \index commands, 454
 combining, 455
- modifying environments, 380–383
- monospaced fonts, 88
- \month** (time com.), 80
- month (BIB $\mathrm{\TeX}$ database field), 425, 436
- Moore, Ross, xxvii, 242, 558
- movable arguments of commands, 74, 475
- \mp** (\mp math op.), **506**
- \mpfootnote** (counter), 399
- \mrabbrev.bib** (BIB $\mathrm{\TeX}$ database file), 436
- \mrnumber** (bibl. com.), 425
- \mspace** (spacing com.), **190, 190, 513**
- \mtbold** (opt. of **mathtime** pack.), 545
- \mtfonts.fdd** (PSNFSS distr. file), 545
- \mu** (μ Greek char.), **502**
- \mu** (math unit, rel.), **190, 190, 513**
- \multicol** (pack.), 101, 307, 313
- \multicols** (disp. text env.), 101, 523
- \multicolumn** (table com.), **137, 138, 137–139**
 multicolumn text
- in documents, **101, 313, 523**
 in tables, 137–139
- multiline
 boxes, 107
 formulas, **30–32, 207–243**
 Visual Guide to, **207, 208**
 aligning, 217–218
 splitting, 212–214
- limits, 176
- math environments, 333
 adjusting columns in, 209, 210, **231–239**
 aligning, 209, 210
 marginal comments in, 112
 page breaks in, 242–243
 subscripts and superscripts, 176
- table entries, 137, 138
- \multimap** (→ math arrow), **507**
- multipage tables, 313
- multiple
 arguments
 in user-defined commands, 370, 371
 authors
 in bibliographies, 426
 in documents, 46, 281, 304
 bibliographies in a document, 267
 captions, 259
 citations, 264
 documents, cross-referencing among, 313
 files, documents composed of, 476–479
 indexes, 463–464
 spaces, 19, 64, 71
 tables of contents, 474
- multiplication, 23, 158, 161

- `multline` (disp. math env.), 208, 210, **212–214**
 indentation of lines in, 213
 rules for, 213
- `multiline*` (disp. math env.), 213–214
 indentation of lines in, 213
- `\multlinegap` (length com.), 213
- `myams.tpl`, 294–297
- `myheadings` (page style), 268
- N**
- `n-th root`, 27, **162**
- `\nabla` (∇ math sym.), 508
- `namelimits` (opt. of `amsmath` pack.), **299**
- names
- base (of files), 531
 - for abstracts, 251
 - for proclamations, 125, 128
 - of authors
 - in articles, 276, 296, 304
 - in bibliographies, 426
 - in running heads, 276
 - of commands, 68, 69, 386
 - of counters, 128
 - of files, 44
 - with `\graphicspath` command, 479
 - of fonts
 - \LaTeX 2.09, 313
 - PSNFSS (Berry scheme), 544
 - redefinable, 267, 322, 323, 363, **375**, 548
 - tagging equations with, 29, **201–204**, 211, 213, 215, 218, 230, 231
- naming rule, *see* source files, naming of
- `\natural` (\natural math sym.), 508
- `\ncong` (\cong neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\ne` (\neq neg. binary rel.), 194, 505
- `\nearrow` (\nearrow math arrow), 507
- `\NeedsTeXFormat` (preamble com.), 86, **250**, 386, 532
- `\neg` (\neg math sym.), 508
- negated math symbols, **194–195**, 505
- `\negmedspace` (spacing com.), 190, 513, 520
- `\negthickspace` (spacing com.), 190, 513, 520
- `\negthinspace` (spacing com.), 182, **190**, 190, 513, 520
- `\neq` (\neq neg. binary rel.), 505
- nesting
- of `comment` environments, 86
 - of list text environments, 121
- New Font Selection Scheme, *see* NFSS and PSNFSS
- `\newcommand` (user-defined com.), 74, **364–380**
 defining arguments with, 370
 name already in use, 376
 optional arguments, 374
- `\newcommand*` (user-defined com.), 373
- `\newcounter` (user-defined counter com.), 400, 404
 optional argument of, **400**
- `\newenvironment` (user-defined env.), 380–383
- `\newenvironment*` (user-defined env.), 385
- `\newlabel` (aux. file com.), 531
- `\newlattice` (pack.), 250, 386, 387
- `\newlattice.sty` (sample file), 311, 379, 383, **386–392**
- `\newlength` (length-command def. com.), 404
- `\newline` (line breaking com.), *see also* `\``, 15
- `\newline` (line-breaking com.), **97**, **98**
- `\newpage` (page breaking com.), 15, **100**, **101**, 261
- `\newtheorem` (procl. com.), 37, **125**, 127, 129, 131, 294, 326, 402
 optional arguments of, 127, 128
 syntax of, 128
- `\newtheorem*` (procl. com.), **129**, 382
- `\newtheoremstyle` (procl. com.), 131
- `\exists` (\exists math sym.), 508
- NFSS (New Font Selection Scheme), **523**, 524
 documentation for, 553
 low-level font commands, 552
- `\nfssfont` (pack.), 311
- `\nfssfont.tex` (\LaTeX distr. file), 78, 311
- `\NG` (Eng Eur. char.), 519
- `\ng` (eng Eur. char.), 519
- `\ngeq` (\geq neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\ngeqq` ($\geq\geq$ neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\ngeqslant` (\geqslant neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\ngtr` (\gt neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\ni` (\ni \ni binary rel.), 503
- `\nLeftarrow` (\Leftarrow math arrow), 507
- `\nleftarrow` (\leftarrow math arrow), 507
- `\nLeftrightarrow` (\Leftrightarrow math arrow), 507
- `\nleftrightarrow` (\leftrightarrow math arrow), 507
- `\nleq` (\leq neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\nleqq` ($\leq\leq$ neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\nleqslant` (\leqslant neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\nless` (\lessdot neg. binary rel.), 505
- `\nmid` (\mid neg. binary rel.), 194, 505
- `\noamsfonts` (doc. class opt.), 300
- `\nobreakdash` (hyph. prev. com.), 83
- `\nobreakspace` (spacing com.), 76
- `\nocite` (bibl. com.), **439**, 441
- `\nocite*` (bibl. com.), 439
- `\nofiles` (preamble com.), 486
 and auxiliary files, 486, 531
- `\noindent` (indentation-suppression com.), **99**, 484
- `\nointlimits` (opt. of `amsmath` pack.), 299

- \nolimits (limit-control com.), **161, 172**, 174, 182
 \nolinebreak (linebreak-suppression com.), 99
 nomath (doc. class opt.), 300
 nonamelimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), 299
 nonbreakable spaces (\sim tie), **11**, 28, 63, 66, 75, **76**, 99, 520
 absorb spaces, 76
 in BIBTEX databases, 427
 with cross-references, 257
 \nonfrenchspacing (spacing com.), 67
 \nopagebreak (page break suppression com.), 100
 normal
 document font family, 89
 font shape
 command declarations for, **90**, 90, 123, 516, 545
 commands for, **90**, 90, 516, 545
 math commands for, **163, 196, 196, 512**
 \normalfont (font shape com. dec.), **90**, 90, 123, 163, 516, 545
 \normalsize (font size com.), **93**, 93, 517
 nosumlimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), **299**
 \not (math com.), **194**
 \notag, 30, 31, 211, 213, **215**, 218, 231
 notation (text env.), 327
 notations, *see* proclamations
 notcite (opt. of showkeys pack.), 257
 note (beamer doc. class opt.), 355
 \note (beamer com.), 355
 note (BIBTEX database field), 425
 note1.tex (sample file), 9–11
 note1b.tex (sample file), 12–13
 note2.tex (sample file), 13–15
 notes, in presentations, 355, 356
 noteslug.tex (sample file), 13
 \notin (\notin neg. binary rel.), **194**, 505
 notitlepage (doc. class opt.), **299**, 307, 468
 Nowacki, Janusz M., 525
 \nparallel (\nparallel neg. binary rel.), 505
 \nprec (\nprec neg. binary rel.), 505
 \npreceq (\npreceq neg. binary rel.), 505
 \nrightarrow (\nrightarrow math arrow), 507
 \nrightarrow (\nrightarrow math arrow), 507
 \nshortmid (\nshortmid neg. binary rel.), 505
 \nshortparallel (\nshortparallel neg. binary rel.), 505
 \nsim (\nsim neg. binary rel.), 505
 \nsubseteqq (\nsubseteqq neg. binary rel.), 181, 505
 \nsubseteqq (\nsubseteqq neg. binary rel.), 505
 \nsucc (\nsucc neg. binary rel.), 505
 \nsucceq (\nsucceq neg. binary rel.), 505
 \nsupseteqq (\nsupseteqq neg. binary rel.), 505
 \nsupseteqq (\nsupseteqq neg. binary rel.), 505
- NTG (Dutch TEX user group), 541
 \ntriangleleft (\ntriangleleft neg. binary rel.), 505
 \ntrianglelefteq (\ntrianglelefteq neg. binary rel.), 505
 \ntriangleright (\ntriangleright neg. binary rel.), 505
 \ntrianglerighteq (\ntrianglerighteq neg. binary rel.), 505
 \nu (ν Greek char.), 502
 number (BIBTEX database field), 424, 425
 numbered lists, *see* enumerate
 numbering
 automatic, 28, 30, 37, 46, 119, 125, 231, 252
 of appendices, 255, 467
 of equations, **27–29**, 55, **156–157**, 201, 211, 213, 215
 groups, 218–219
 in chapters of books, 467
 in multiline math environments, 215
 is relative, 201, 203
 of subsidiary math environments, 230, 231
 suppressing, 30, 31, 157, 201, 211, 213, 215, 218, 231
 variations, **203**, 218
 within sections, 156, 250
 within split subsid. math align. env., 230–231
 of figures, 258
 of pages, style of, 401
 of proclamations, 125, **127–128**
 consecutively, 127–128
 suppressing, 129, 130, 382
 within sections, 127
 of structural units, 400, 466, 536
 controlling, 403
 in books, 466
 sections, 252
 suppressing, 46, 253, 467
 of tables, 258
 renumbering, 28, 536
 with counters, 398–406
 resetting, 399, 402
 \numberline (toc file com.), 475
 numbers
 counter styles for, 123, 401, **400–401**, 411
 for equations, placement of, 298, 307
 for proclamations, position of, 131
 in bibliographic fields, 424
 in lists, 119
 keys, 62
 line
 in error messages, 6, **9**, 153, 154
 in warning messages, 12
 page
 referencing, 258
 style of, 401

- ranges, **14, 75, 81**
 in **BIBTEX** databases, 424, 427
 in index entries, 454
 real, in length commands, 403
 stored by **LATEX**, 80
 stored in
 counters, 399
 registers, 377
 version, 532
- \numberwithin, **156**, 250, 466
- numeric counter style (\arabic), 401, **401**, 411
- \nVDash ($\not\models$ neg. binary rel.), **505**
- \nwarrow (\nwarrow math arrow), **507**
- O**
- O'Sean, Arlene Ann, 217, 553, 560
- O, slashed (\mathcal{O}, \emptyset), **81, 515**
- Oberdiek, Heiko, 319
- obtaining
 files from the Internet, 537–541
 PostScript fonts, 546
 sample files for this book, 4, 541
 the AMS packages and AMSFonts, 540
- octothorp (#), **77, 81, 518**
- \oddsidemargin (length com.), 270
- \odot (\odot math op.), **506**
- \OE ethel (\OE), **81, 515**
- \oe ethel (\oe), **81, 515**
- ogonek (Eur. accent), **519**
- \oint (\oint large math op.), **161, 175, 511**
- old-style digits, 62
- \oldstylenums (old-style digits com.), 62
- \Omega (Ω Greek char.), **502**
- \omega (ω Greek char.), **502**
- \ominus (\ominus math op.), **506**
- \onecolumn (doc. class opt.), 299, 307
- \onecolumn (single-column com.), 101
- \oneside (doc. class opt.), **299**, 307, 468
- \only (beamer com.), 333–335, **337–339**, 343
- \onslide (beamer com.), 333, 335, **337–339**, 342, 343
- \openany (doc. class opt.), 468
- \openbib (doc. class opt.), **308, 308**
- \openright (doc. class opt.), 468
- operating systems, *see* Mac, PC, or UNIX
- operations
 arithmetical, 22–23, 157–159
 binary, *see* binary operations
- operators, math, 22, 24, 26, 157, 172, **175, 170–176**, 371, 506, 510
 declaring, 173
- large, **25, 26, 161, 169, 175, 174–176**, 299, 511
- sizing of math delimiters with, 169
- with limits, **25, 27, 161, 171, 172, 174, 175, 299, 510, 511**
- defining, 173, 195, 196
- without limits
 defining, 173, 195, 196, 198, 250, 301
- \oplus (\oplus math op.), **506**
- optional
 arguments, **15, 71, 98, 100, 112, 113, 115, 125, 162, 179, 233, 242, 250**
 multiple, 70
 of \\", **15, 98, 242**
 of commands, 56, 120, 122, 123, 127, 200, 201, 264, 266, 276–279, 351, 400, 402, 407, 409, 410, 414, 475
 of environments, 125, 128, 132, 135, 229, 243, 260, 384, 486
 of sectioning commands, 253, 473
 of structural commands, 255, 466
 of top matter commands, 273–281, 331
 of user-defined commands, 374
 of user-defined environments, 380, 382, 384
 use square brackets ([]), **15, 27, 69–70, 123, 132, 135, 285**
- bibliographic fields, 425, 428–436
- hyphens, 13, 82, **82, 96**
- options
 of document classes, *see* document class options
 of packages, *see* package options
- organization (**BIBTEX** database field), 425, 431
- organization of files, 476–479
- orientation of pages, document class options for, 307
- orthogonality of font commands, **94**
- \oslash (\oslash math op.), **506**
- \OT1 font encoding, 544
- \otimes (\otimes math op.), **506**
- \out (hyperref bookmarks file), 321
- \overbrace (horizontal brace com.), **178, 183**
 with a superscript, 178
- \overdot (` text accent), **79, 516**
- \overfullrule (length com.), 96
- overlapping braces, 72
- overlays, *see also under* presentations
 commands for, 337
 layering, 334
- \overleftarrow (\overleftarrow{x} math arrow), 179
- \overrightarrow (\overrightarrow{x} math arrow), 179
- \overline (\overline{x} math line sym.), 177, **179, 185**
- \overprint (beamer env.), 359

- \overrightarrow (\vec{x} math arrow), 179
 \overset (symbol-building com.), 183, **192**, 372
 creating binary operations and relations with, 193
 \owns (\ni binary rel.), 503
- P**
- \P (¶ pilcrow or paragraph)
 math symbol, 508
 text symbol, 81, 518
 package options, *see also* specific packages, 249, 257, 298–299, 301, 320–322, 386, 512, 545, 546, 548
 are passed down from document classes, 250
 handled electively, 313
 preventing loading of, 300
 packages, 36, 249, 311, 522, 524–526
 accents, 178
 afterpage, 312
 alltt, 147, 311, 534
 amsbsy, 301, 302, 528
 amscd, 301
 amsfonts, **301–302**, 528
 amsgen, 301, 302
 amsidx, 302
 amsmath, xxvi, 53, 231, 299, **300**, 301, 302, 403, 524, 525, 528, 533
 amsopn, 301, 302
 amssymb, 37, 180, 294, 300, 301, 374, 528
 amstext, 301, 302
 amsthm, 302, 525
 amsxtra, 176, 177, 300, 301
 apalike, 437
 array, 312
 automatic loading of, 53, 349, 528, 529
 babel, 312, 547–548
 backref, 320
 biblatex, 447
 bm, 312
 booktabs, 140
 calc, 312, 403, 406
 commands in, 386
 cyrillic, 312
 dates of, 533
 dcolumn, 136, 313
 delarray, 313
 distribution, AMS, 271, **300–302**, 325, 380, 417, 436, 437, 521, 528, 553
 documentation for, 113, 261, 312, 313, 359, 380, 545, 546, 553
 enumerate, 123, 313, 382, 387
 eucal, 301, 302, 386, 512
 options, **301**, 390, 512
- eufrak, 302
 exscale, 301, 311
 fancyhdr, 270, 537, 540
 fileerr, 313
 fontenc, **545**, 547, 548
 fontsmp, 313
 ftnright, 313
 geometry, 270
 graphics, 312
 graphicx, 37, 39, 250, 259–260, 300, 523, 552
 hhline, 140, 313
 hyperref, 320–323
 in required directory, 312
 in tools directory, 312–313
 in unpacked directory, 311
 indentfirst, 313
 inputenc, 547
 interdependencies of, 271
 latexsym, 37, 180, 249, 294, 300, 311
 layout, 268, 313
 loading with \usepackage, 70, 249
 multiple, 250
 longtable, 313
 lucidabr, 546
 makeglos, 464
 makeidx, 311, **450**, 478
 mathtime, 545
 mathtools, 206
 multicol, 101, 307, 313
 newlattice, 250, 386, 387
 nfssfont, 311
 obtaining the AMS packages and AMSFonts, 540
 options, *see* package options
 paralist, 123
 psnfss, 312
 rawfonts, 313
 setspace, 99
 showidx, 311, 453
 showkeys, 257, 313
 somedefs, 313
 source files, 250, **310**, 437, 540
 tabularx, 313
 theorem, 313
 times, 544
 tools, 312
 trace, 313
 updates to AMSFonts and amsmath, 533
 upref, 300, 301
 varioref, 258, 313
 verbatim, 86, 87, 147, 313, 387
 versions of, 524, 525, 532–534
 xcolor, 325, 348
 xr, 258, 313

- `xspace`, 313, 368–369
- `xy-pic`, 242
- `page` (counter), 399, 399
- `pagebackref` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 320, 321
- `\pagebreak` (page breaking com.), **100**, 484, 486
 - optional arguments of, 100
- `\pagename` (redef. name), 376
- `\pagenumbering` (page-number style com.), 401
- `\pageref` (cross-ref. com.), 28, 29, 31, 202, 255, **258**, 267, 322, 484
- `\pageref*` (`hyperref` cross-ref. com.), 322
- pages
 - breaking, 15, **100–101**, 261
 - in `align` environment, 242
 - in `cases` subsidiary environment, 242
 - in displayed math environments, **242–243**
 - in `gather` environment, 242
 - in multiline math environments, 243
 - preventing, 242
 - components of, 268
 - headers, *see* running heads
 - layout of, **268–270**, 313
 - for `amsart` document class, 269
 - numbering, style of, 401
 - odd, starting chapters on, 468
 - orientation of, document class options for, 307
 - referencing, 202, 258
 - with `varioref` package, 313
 - size changing with `\enlargethispage`, 101, 484, 487
 - styles of, 268–270
 - title, 535
 - document class options for, 249, 299, 300, 307
 - of articles, 37, 249, 251
 - of books, 467, 469
 - of presentations, 55
 - `pages` (`BIBTeX` database field), 425
 - page ranges in, 427
 - `\pagestyle` (set page style), 268
 - pagination, 484–486
 - paper size, document class options for, 298, 306
 - `\par` (paragraph breaking com.), **64**, 65, 73, 90, 273
 - `\par` (paragraph-breaking com.), 95, 118, 124
 - in error messages, 99
 - `\paragraph` (struct. com.), **252**, 466
 - `paragraph` (counter), 399
 - paragraph boxes, 110–112
 - paragraph text symbol, *see* `\P`
 - `\paragraph*` (struct. com.), 253
 - `\paragraphname` (`hyperref` redef. name), 323
 - paragraphs, 64, **99–100**
 - breaking into lines, 12, 96, 97, 530
 - breaking lines in, 82
 - hanging indents, 99
 - horizontal alignment of, 124
 - indentation of first lines, 99, 103, 313, **404**
 - interline spacing of, 23
 - terminating
 - with blank lines, 11, **64**, 99, 118, 144
 - with `\par` command, **64**, 65, 73, 90, 95, 99, 124
 - vertical spacing between, 124, 404, 407, 413, 481
 - `\paralist` (pack.), 123
 - `\parallel` (|| binary rel.), 503
 - `\parbox` (box com.), 107, 109, **110**, **111**, 138, 405
 - in `tabular` environments, 111
 - `\parentequation`, 401
 - parentheses (()), 8, 62
 - as math delimiters, **24**, 26, 166, 167, 184, 217, 509
 - in index entries, 455
 - suppressing the use of in tags, 202
 - `\parindent` (length com.), **404**, 414
 - `\parsep` (length com.), **407**, 408, 413, 414
 - `\parskip` (length com.), **404**, 407, 408, 414, 481
 - `\part` (struct. com.), 253, 304, 350, **466**
 - `\part` (counter), 399
 - `\partial` (∂ math sym.), 508
 - `\partname` (redef. name), 376
 - and `hyperref` package, 323
 - `\partopsep` (length com.), 407
 - parts
 - in books, 466
 - in presentations, 354
 - Patashnik, Oren, 421, 446, 559
 - pathnames, on Mac, PC, and UNIX systems, 479
 - `\pause` (beamer com.), 333, **333**, 334, 337
 - `pc` (point abs. unit), 403
 - `pcr` (PSNFSS font name), 544
 - PCs, xxvi, 3, 4, 9, 479, 522
 - FTP clients, 538
 - `LATeX` front end, 3, 326, 489
 - `LATeX` implementations, 490–494
 - line ending characters, 9
 - WinEdt `LATeX` front end, xxvi, 9, 11, 53, 442, 461, 490, 491, 492

- PDF (Portable Document Format), 318–319, 486
 files
 bibliographic citations in, 321
 bookmarks in, 321
 creating, 319
 external hyperlinks in, 322–323
 for graphics, 39, 259, 326
 for legacy documents, 319
 for presentations, 53–58, 325–359
 hyperlinks in, 319–323
 JavaScript in, 318
 putting on the Internet, 319
 size of, 318
 suppressing hyperlinks in, 322
 typeset, 5, 318, 326
 viewing in Web browsers, 318
 fonts
 partial downloading of, 318
 proprietary, 318
`pdftex` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 320
 percent (%)
 as comment character, 6, 10, 19, 21, 61,
 85–86, 141, 294, 458
 in `BIBTeX` databases, 86, 443
 as text symbol, 9, 77, 81, 518
 in e-mail addresses, 278
 periods (.), 9, 62, **66–67**
 and initials, 67
 and italic correction, 92
 and spacing rules, 66–67
 end of sentences, 66
 following capital letters, 67
 in abbreviations, 66
 in bibliographies, 66
 in `BIBTeX` databases, 426
 terminating sentences with, **64–67**
`\perp` (⊥ binary rel.), 503
 personal computer, *see* computer, Mac, or PC
 Personal `TEX`, Inc., 545
 personalized templates
 for AMS document classes, 294–297
`\phantom` (spacing com.), **102–103, 191–192**,
 223, 406
`PHDTHESES` (bibl. entry type), 425, **433–434**
`\Phi` (Φ Greek char.), 502
`\phi` (ϕ Greek char.), 502
`phv` (`PSNFSS` font name), 544
`\Pi` (Π Greek char.), 502
`\pi` (π Greek char.), 502
 pica (pc abs. unit), 403
`picture` (drawing env.), 259, 551
 portability of, 552
`\pilcrow` (¶ text sym.), 81, 518
`\pitchfork` (\pitchfork binary rel.), 504
 placement
 of commas in formulas, 155
 of equation numbers, 298, 307
 of equations, 298, 307
 of figures, **260**, 484, 486
 of \index commands, **458**, 486
 of index in document, 450, 461
 of \label commands, 486
 of limits, 299
 of roots, 162
 of tables, 484, 486
 of text boxes, 115
`plain`
 `BIBTeX` style, 421
 page style, 268
 theorem style, **129**, 129–131
`Plain TEX`, 552
 plain text, 9
`plain.bst` (`BIBTeX` style file), 421
`plain.tex` (Plain `TEX` source file), 528
 platform independence
 of graphics, 325
 of source files, 3, 9
 platforms, *see under* Mac, PC, and UNIX
 plus (+), 22, 188, 191, 192, 216–218
 as binary operation, 506
 plus and minus rule, **188**, 191, 192
 and subformulas, 216
 in `multiline` environments, 213
`\pm` (\pm math op.), 506
`\pmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 25–26, **235**
`\pmb` (poor man's bold font com.), **198–199**,
 301
`\pmod` (\pmod math op.), 24, **173, 174**
`\pod` (\pod math op.), 24, **173, 174**
 poetry, typing, 144–145
 point (pt abs. unit), 12, 15, 54, 89, 93, 95, 96,
 105, 107, 110, 111, 308, 403
 poor man's bold, **198–199**, 301
 portability
 of bibliographic databases, 426, 428
 of illustrations, 552
 of `LATEX` files, 9
 of prohibited characters, 64
 of `TEX` files, 9
 Portable Document Format, *see under* PDF
 Portable Graphics Format, 325
 position, of proclamation numbers, 131
 PostScript (ps), 317
 documents on the Internet, 317
 files
 converting to PDF, 319
 including fonts in, 317
 putting on the Internet, 319
 size of, **317**, 319
 fonts, 317, 523, **543–546**

- AMSFonts, 300, 301, 524, 525, 533
- Computer Modern, 523, 525, **543**
- European Modern, 524
- obtaining, 546
- using with L^AT_EX, 312, 545
- PostScript New Font Selection Scheme, *see* PSNFSS
- \pounds
 - math symbol (\mathcal{L}), 508
 - pound sign or sterling (\mathcal{L}), 519
- \Pr (Pr math op.), 172, 510
- preamble, **35–37, 248–251**
 - commands in, 13, 35, 53–55, 70, 85, 86, 99, 125, 127, 129, 131, 156, 173, 196, 249, 250, 294, 300, 320, 326–327, 366, 382, 386, 402, 463, 478, 486, 531, 532
 - customizing, in template files, 44, 294
 - defining counters in, 400
 - proclamations defined in, 250
 - user-defined commands in, 250, 366
- \prec (\prec binary rel.), 503
- \precapprox (\approx binary rel.), 504
- \preccurlyeq (\preccurlyeq binary rel.), 504
- \preceq (\preceq binary rel.), 503
- \precnapprox (\approx neg. binary rel.), 505
- \precneqq ($\not\approx$ neg. binary rel.), 505
- \precnsim ($\not\approx$ neg. binary rel.), 505
- \precsim (\precsim binary rel.), 504
- preparation
 - final, of books, 482–487
 - of illustrations, 483
- presentations, **53, 325**
 - abstracts in, 53–55
 - babybeamer1, 334, 333–335
 - babybeamer2, 333
 - babybeamer3, 338
 - babybeamer4, 340
 - babybeamer5, 341
 - babybeamer6, 341
 - babybeamer7, 346, 345–347
 - babybeamer8, 348
 - babybeamer9, 351
 - babybeamer10, 359, 360
 - beamertexture1, 352
 - beamertexture2, 354, 354
 - body of, 327
 - columns in, 347–348
 - commands for, 53, 55, 349, 351, 357
 - optional arguments of, 351
 - cross-referencing within, 328
 - equations in, 328
 - file formats
 - PDF, 326
 - flexibility in, 358
- frames in, 358
- hyperlinks in, 343–347, 358
- in color, 348–350
- lists in, 339–341
- navigation symbols, 354
- notes in, 355, 356
- overlays in, **333, 333–343**
 - commands for, 333, 335, 337
 - examples of, 335–337
 - layering, 334, 335
 - specifications, 337, 341
 - syntax of, 337–339
- parts in, 354
- planning, 358
- preamble of, 53–55, 326–327
- quickbeamer1, 328, 329, 330, 333
- quickbeamer2, 331, 332, 333
- sectioning of, 55, 328, 331
- sidebars, 331
- sidebars in, 343, 350
- slides, 333
- structure of, 350
- tables of contents in, 351, 358
- themes for, 328, 331, 356, **356, 357**
 - color options, 357
 - font options, 357
- theorems in, 358
- top matter of, 53–55, 326–327, 331
- with beamer document class, 325–359
- with FoilT_EX, 53
- preventing
 - case changes in bibliographic entries, 427
 - hyphenation, 83–84, 107
 - indentation of paragraphs, 99
 - line breaks, 99, 107
 - page breaks, **98, 100, 242**
 - removal
 - of horizontal space, 103
 - of vertical space, 105
 - spaces following environments, 383
- \prime (' math sym.), 508
- prime ('), 23, 159, 194, 508
- primitive commands, 377, 528
- printers
 - drivers for, 526, **530**
 - specifying for hyperref package, 320
 - DVI drivers for, 312, 539
- \Printindex (index com. for multiple indexes), 464
- \printindex (index com.), **450, 461**
- printing
 - typeset (DVI) files, 530
 - typeset (PDF) files, 530
- \proc (doc. class), 529
- \proc-1 (doc. class), 272, 376

- PROCEEDINGS (bibl. entry type), 425, 432–433, **436**
 proceedings, conference, in BIBTEX database files, 424
 processed
 bibliography files, *see* bbl
 index files, *see* ind
 processing
 bibliographies, 437–446
 indexes, 459–461
 proclamations, 37, 46, 117, **124–131**, 407
 commands for
 \newtheorem (procl. com.), 37, **125**,
 127, 129, 131, 294, 402
 \newtheorem* (procl. com.), **129**, 382
 \newtheoremstyle, 131
 \theoremstyle (procl. com.), 129–131
 \theoremstyle* (procl. com.),
 129–131
 counters for, 399
 defining, 37, 46, **125**, 127, 128, 131, 294,
 382, 402
 in preamble, 250
 with theorem package, 313
 environments for
 theorem, 37, 46, 52, 54, 125, 128, 343,
 384
 invoking, 37, 46, 52, **125**, 128, 343, 384
 lines following, 118
 lists in, 126
 logical design using, 535
 names of, 55, 128
 numbering of
 consecutively, 127–128
 within sections, 127
 position of numbers, 131
 styles of, **129–131**, 524
 definition, **129**, 129–130
 plain, **129**, 129–130
 remark, **129**, 129–130
 unnumbered, 129, 130, 382
 \prod (\prod large math op.), **175**, 511
 productivity tools, 5, 494, 498, *see also*
 synchronization, block comment,
 jump to a line
 products, 26, 27, 174
 products.eps (sample illus. file), 39
 products.pdf (sample illus. file), 39, 54, 327
 programming, in TEX, 553
 programs, typing, 141–143, 145–147
 prohibited keys, 9, 63
 \projlim (proj lim math op.), **172**, 510
 prompts, **534–535**
 * (interactive), **113**, 376–378, **534**
 **, 534
 ?, 20, 48, 491, 534
 file name, 534
 responding to, 20, 48, **534–535**
 proof (text env.), 39, 117, **131–133**, 302, 327
 changing q.e.d. symbol, 374
 lines following, 118
 lists in, 131
 optional arguments of, 132
 placement of q.e.d. symbol, 132
 \proofname (redef. name), 376
 proofs, 131–133
 proportional fonts, 88
 propositions, *see* proclamations
 \proto (\propto binary rel.), 503
 \protect (protect fragile commands), **74**, 252,
 253, 466, 475
 protecting
 capitalization in bibliographic entries, 427
 fragile commands, **74**, 252, 253, 466, 475
 protocols
 File Transfer, *see* FTP
 Hypertext Transfer, *see* HTTP
 \providecommand (user-defined com.), 373,
 375, 378
 \providecommand* (user-defined com.), 373
 \ProvidesPackage (pack. com.), 534
 providing commands, 375
 PS, *see* PostScript
 ps2pdf (opt. of hyperref pack.), 320
 psamsfonts
 amsfonts package option, 301
 document class option, 300
 psfonts.ins (PSNFSS distr. file), 544
 \Psi (Ψ Greek char.), 502
 \psi (ψ Greek char.), 502
 PSNFSS (PostScript New Font Selection Scheme), 544, 545
 distribution, 540, 544–545
 font names (Berry scheme), 544
 psnfss (LATEX distr. directory), 311
 psnfss (pack.), 312
 pt (point abs. unit), 12, 15, 54, 89, 93, 95, 96,
 105, 107, 110, 111, 308, 403
 ptm (PSNFSS font name), 544
 publisher (BIBTEX database field), 424, 425
 publishers, preparing manuscripts for, 465
 punctuation
 in BIBTEX databases, 423–428, 445–446
 marks, 9, 14, **62**, **75–76**, 81, 156, 368, **515**,
 518
 Q
 q.e.d. symbol, 132, 374
 \qedhere (proof com.), 133
 \qedsymbol (\square math sym.), 131, 374

- suppressing, 132
`\qquad` (spacing com.), 27, 102, 105, 190, 190,
 224, 513, 520
`\quad` (spacing com.), 24, 27, 102, 105, 154,
 190, 190, 225, 513, 520
 question marks (?), 9, 62
 Spanish (‘), 81, 515, 518
 terminating sentences with, 64–67
`quickbeamer.pdf` (sample file), 326
`quickbeamer.tex` (sample file), 326–328
`quickbeamer1.pdf` (sample file), 328
`quickbeamer1.tex` (sample file), 328
`quickbeamer2.pdf` (sample file), 331
`quickbeamer2.tex` (sample file), 331
 quiet mode, 534
`quotation` (disp. text env.), 144, 407
 quotation marks, 9, 63, 75, 81
 double quote key, 9, 62, 63, 75
 in BIBTeX database fields, 424, 445, 446
 in BIBTeX entries, 436
 in `\index` commands, 457
 European, 519
 single quote key, 9, 23, 62, 75
 typing, 11
 quotations, typing, 143–144
`quote` (disp. text env.), 143, 407
`\quotedblbase` (Eur. quot. mark), 519
 quoting, special characters in `\index`
 commands, 457
- R**
- `\r` (° ring text accent), 79, 516
`\raggedleft` (align. command dec.), 124
`\raggedright` (align. command dec.), 124
 Rahtz, Sebastian, 259, 319, 523, 542, 558
`\raisebox` (box com.), 115
 ranges, numeric, 14, 75, 81, 518
 in BIBTeX databases, 424, 427
 in index entries, 454
`\rangle` (math delimiter), 167, 168, 509
`\rawfonts` (pack.), 313
`\rbrace` (} math delimiter), 167, 509
`\rbrack` (] math delimiter), 167, 509
`\rceil` (] math delimiter), 167, 509
`\Re` (ℜ math sym.), 508
 read-only, making templates, 297
 readability
 of documents, 93, 358
 of source files, 19, 22, 65, 135, 154, 166,
 363–367, 379, 415
 Reader, Adobe Acrobat, *see under* Adobe
 Reader
 real numbers, in length commands, 403
 redefinable names, 322, 323, 363, 375, 376, 548
 redefining commands, 374–375
`\ref` (cross-ref. com.), 28, 29, 31, 123, 156,
 202, 215, 255, 255, 258, 301, 313,
 322, 384
`\ref*` (*hyperref* cross-ref. com.), 322
 references
 bibliographic, 29, 40–41, 48, 66, 261–267,
 328, 375, 407, 437, 442
 citing, 29, 47, 264, 441
 citing with BIBTeX, 439
 including without citing, 439, 441
 defining, 28, 29, 31, 50, 156, 215, 231,
 252, 255, 328
 symbolic, showing in margins, 257, 313
 to equations, 28, 29, 31, 156, 202, 203,
 215, 219, 255, 256, 263, 328
 to pages, 28, 29, 31, 202, 255, 258, 322,
 484
 and *variorref* package, 313
 to sections, 28, 29, 31, 123, 156, 202, 215,
 255, 258, 301, 313, 322, 384
 referencing, *see* cross-referencing or symbolic
 referencing
`\refname` (redef. name), 376
`\refstepcounter` (cross-ref. counter incr.
 com.), 402
 registered trademark (® text sym.), 81, 518
 registers, 377
 relations, binary, *see* binary relations
 relative
 numbering of equations, 29, 201, 203
 spaces, 105
 units, 105, 107, 111, 403
`\relax` (do nothing com.), 385
 release dates, of LATEX, 86, 251, 532
`\remark` (procl. style), 129, 129–131
`\ renewcommand` (user-defined com.), 87,
 88, 99, 123, 132, 139, 267, 322,
 370, 373, 374–375, 378, 382, 383,
 400–402
`\ renewcommand*` (user-defined com.), 373
`\ renewenvironment` (user-defined com.),
 383, 385
`\ renewenvironment*` (user-defined com.),
 385
 renumbering, automatic, 28, 536
`\ report` (doc. class), 253, 303, 303–308,
 376, 529
 reports, technical, in BIBTeX database
 files, 434–435
`\reqno`
 `\amsmath` package option, 302
 document class option, 249, 298, 307

- required
 arguments, 111, 112, 179, 194, 272, 273, 535
 multiple, 19, 70, 137, 192, 194, 268, 311, 379, 404–406
 of commands, 19, 69, 137, 192, 194, 257, 268, 280, 404, 473, 478, 516
 of environments, 69, 135, 136, 224, 226, 236, 237, 263–264, 266, 309, 383–385, 476
 use braces ({}), 8, 14, 19, 69, 70, 530
 bibliographic fields, 425, 426, 428–436
required (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 311, 540
 packages in, 312
\RequirePackage (pack. com.), 386, 387
 research support (**\thanks** top matter com.), 44, 87, 279, 281, 296, 304
 resetting counters, 400, 402
 resolution, of Type 1 fonts, 543
 Return key, 9, 11, 21, 48–51, 63, 153, 491, 534
\rfloor (] math delimiter), 167, 509
\rhd (▷ math op.), 506
\rho (ρ Greek char.), 502
\right (math delim.), 167–168, 170, 184, 235
 blank, 168, 182
 must be balanced, 168, 217
 right double quote (")
 text symbol, 75, 81, 518
 typing, 11
 right justification of text, 8, 14, 68
 right single quote (')
 key, 9, 11, 62, 75
 text symbol, 75, 519
\right) () math delimiter), 24, 26, 166, 168, 184, 217, 235
\right. (blank math delim.), 168
\right> () math delimiter), 168
\right] () math delimiter), 24, 166, 182
\rightarrow (⇒ math arrow), 507
\rightarrowtail (→ math arrow), 507
\rightarrowdown (→ math arrow), 507
\rightarrowup (→ math arrow), 507
\leftleftarrows (⇐ math arrow), 507
\rightharpoons (⇒ math arrow), 507
\rightmargin (length com.), 407, 408, 411
\rightleftarrows (⇒ math arrow), 507
\rightsquigarrow (~~ math arrow), 507
\rightthreetimes (× math op.), 506
\right| (| math delimiter), 24, 26, 168, 180, 189, 191
 ring (° text accent), 79, 516
 ring A (Å), 81, 515
 ring a (å), 81, 515
\risingdotseq (= binary rel.), 504
 Ritter, R. M., 553
\rm (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 94
\rmfamily (font shape com. dec.), 90, 123, 516
\rmfamily (font shape env.), 123
\Roman (uppercase roman-numeral counter-style com.), 401
 roman
 document font family, 89, 89, 544
 font shape, 28, 88, 90, 123, 301, 516
 math, 173, 196, 196
\roman (lowercase roman-numeral counter-style com.), 123, 401
 roots, 27, 161–162
n-th, 27, 162
 placement of, 162
 square, 27, 161
 using struts with, 200
 Rose, Kristoffer H., 242
 row separator (\\"), 25, 30, 31, 33, 44, 46, 98, 124, 135, 141, 142, 145, 176, 211, 213, 215, 216, 227, 231, 242, 273–278, 297, 304, 309
 Rowley, Chris, xxxiii, 523, 524, 559
\rightarrowarrow (⇒ math arrow), 507
\Rsh (↑ math arrow), 507
\rtimes (× math op.), 506
 rubber lengths, 378, 406, 407, 530
\rule (box com.), 113, 114, 140
 rules (lines), filling lines with, *see also* lines (rules), 106, 113
 running
 BBTEX, 437–446
MakeIndex, 459–461
 running heads, 56, 252, 268–270
 author's name in, 276
 fragile commands in, 74
 title in, 274, 297
\rVert (|| math delimiter), 168
\rvert (| math delimiter), 168
S
\S (§)
 math symbol, 508
 section text symbol, 81, 518
sampart-ref.tex (sample file), 320, 323
sampart.tex (sample file), 125, 129, 131, 230, 266, 272, 273, 285–293, 371, 392, 437, 536

- source file, 290–293
typeset, 286–288
sampartb.aux (sample aux. file), 441, 442
sampartb.bbl (sample bibl. file), 441–443
sampartb.bib (sample bibl. file), 437,
 437–443
sampartb.blg (sample BIBTeX log file),
 441, 442
sampartb.tex (sample file), 421, 437,
 439–441, 443
sampartu.tex (sample file), 376, 383,
 392–398, 535
sample files
 amsart.tpl, 294
 amsproc.template, 297
 babybeamer1.pdf, 333–335
 babybeamer2.tex, 334
 babybeamer3.tex, 338
 babybeamer4.tex, 343
 babybeamer5.tex, 341
 babybeamer6.tex, 343
 babybeamer6block.tex, 343
 babybeamer7.tex, 343, 345–347
 babybeamer8.tex, 347
 babybeamer9.tex, 349
 babybeamer10.tex, 359
 beamertexture.tex, 352, 354
 bibl.tpl, 47
 cleardoublepage.sty, 101
 fonttbl.tex, 78, 134
 formula.tex, 164–166
 gg.tex, 44–48
 gg2.tex, 45–46
 ggamsart.tpl, 297
 inbibl.tpl, 263
 intrart.tex, **35–43**, 53, 55, 326, 331
 typeset, 41–43
 intrarti.tex, 450–452, 460, 459–461
 intropres.tex, 53, 55, 57–58
 legacy-article.tex, 304, 305
 letter.tex, 308–310
 math.tex, 17–19
 mathb.tex, 19–22
 myams.tpl, 294–297
 newlattice.sty, 311, 379, 383,
 386–392
 note1.tex, 9–11
 note1b.tex, 12–13
 note2.tex, 13–15
 noteslug.tex, 13
 obtaining, 4
 of presentations, 54, 326–331
 products.eps (illus. file), 39
 products.pdf (illus. file), 39, 54, 327
 quickbeamer.pdf, 326
 quickbeamer.tex, 326–328
 quickbeamer1.pdf, 328
 quickbeamer1.tex, 328
 quickbeamer2.pdf, 331
 quickbeamer2.tex, 331
 sampart-ref.tex, 320, 323
 sampart.tex, 125, 129, 131, 230, 266,
 272, 273, **285–293**, 371, 392, 437,
 536
 source file, 290–293
 typeset, 286–288
 sampartb.bib, **437, 437–443**
 sampartb.tex, 421, 437, 439–441, 443
 sampartu.tex, 376, 383, **392–398**, 535
 sample.cls (doc. class), 10, 11
 SymbolTables.pdf, 4, 9, 15, 19
 template.bib, 423, 437, 446
 topmat.tpl, 282
 sample.cls, 11
 sample.cls (doc. class), 10
samples
 font, 313
 of bibliographies, 47, **261–263**, 423,
 437, **437–438**, 446
 of command (style) files, 311, 379,
 383, 386–398
 of indexes, 452, 450–452
samples (folder), 4, 9, 10, 12–15, 18–20,
 35, 39, 44, 45, 47, 48, 78, 101,
 134, 230, 263, 282, 285, 294, 297,
 304, 308, 320, 326–328, 331, 333,
 339, 341, 343, 354, 358, 359, 376,
 386, 392, 423, 437, 438, 450, 468,
 496, 535, 548
 creating, 4
sans serif
 document font family, **89**, 94, 544
 font shape, 55, 89, 90, **123, 196, 196**,
 512, 516
 Helvetica, 89, 544
 \sb (math subscript com.), 159
 \sc (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 94
scaling graphics, 54
 in figures, 259
 in FoilT_EX, 54
Schöpf, Rainer, 523, 559, 560
Schandl, Bernd, 123
scharfes s (ß, SS), **81, 515**
Schleyer, Antoinette Tingley, 217, 553,
 560
school (BIBTeX database field), 425
Schröder, Martin, 523

scope
 delimited by braces, **71–73**
 of `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands,
242
 of command declarations, **124**,
367–368, **382**
 of commands, **71–73**, **90**, **139**
 global and local, **74**
 setting, with environments, **96**, **213**
`\scriptscriptstyle` (math font size
 com.), **199**, **204**
`\scriptsize` (font size com.), **93**, **93**, **517**
`\scriptstyle` (math font size com.), **199**,
204
`\scshape` (font shape com. dec.), **90**, **91**,
123, **516**
`\scshape` (font shape env.), **123**
`\searrow` (\nwarrow math arrow), **507**
`\sec` (sec math op.), **172**, **510**
`\secnumdepth` (counter), **403**
`\section` (struct. com.), **46**, **55**, **252–255**,
331, **350**, **467**
 optional argument of, **253**
`\section` (counter), **398**, **399**
 section (§ text sym.), **81**, **518**
`\section*` (struct. com.), **46**, **253**, **467**
 sectioning
 commands, *see also* structural
 commands
 optional arguments of, **253**
 provided by `amsart` doc. class, **254**
 provided by `article` doc. class,
254
 provided by book doc. classes,
466–467
 syntax of, **253**
 of articles, **46**, **252–255**
 of books, **466–467**, **479**
 of documents, **11**, **35–41**, **46**, **48**, **49**,
51, **52**, **66**, **68**, **164**, **248**, **251**,
252–255, **261**, **267**, **285**, **304**,
308–310, **406**, **437**, **442**, **449**, **459**,
466–467, **522**, **536**
 of presentations, **55**, **328**, **331**
`\sectionname` (redef. name)
 and `hyperref` package, **323**
 sections, numbering of, **252**
 in books, **466**
 of equations within, **156**, **250**
 of proclamations within, **127**
`\see` (indexing cross-ref. com.), **457**
`\seename` (redef. name), **376**
`\selectfont` (font selection com.), **95**
 selecting
 files to include, **260**, **400**, **477**, **478**,
479, **496**
 fonts, **88–95**
 semicolon (;), **9**, **62**
 sentences
 terminating, **11**, **64–67**
 with periods, **279**
`\series` (BIBTeX database field), **425**
 series commands, for fonts, *see under*
 font commands *and* font
 command declarations
 serif (font shape), *see also under* roman,
89, **89**
 Seroul, Raymond, **553**, **560**
`\setbeamercolor` (beamer com.), **350**
`\setbeamertemplate` (beamer com.), **355**
`\setcounter` (counter-setting com.), **74**,
233, **399**, **402**
`\setlength` (length setting com.), **99**,
100, **113**, **404**
`\setlength` environment, **96**, **213**
`\setminus` (\backslash math op.), **506**
`\setspace` (pack.), **99**
`\settodepth` (measurement com.), **406**
`\settoheight` (measurement com.), **406**
`\settowidth` (measurement com.), **406**
`\sffamily` (font shape com. dec.), **90**, **94**,
123, **516**
`\sffamily` (font shape env.), **123**
 SGML (Standard Generalized Markup
 Language), **523**
 shape commands, for fonts, *see under*
 font commands *and* font
 command declarations
`\sharp` (# math sym.), **508**
 short
 arguments, of user-defined
 commands, **373–374**
 arguments, of user-defined
 environments, **385**
 commands, **73**, **90**, **273**, **284**
 pages, warnings about, **530**
 shorthand, *see under* user-defined
 commands
`\shortmid` (: binary rel.), **504**
`\shortparallel` (|| binary rel.), **504**
`\shoveleft` (align. com.), **214**
`\shoveright` (align. com.), **214**
`\show` (command-examination com.),
377, **377**, **378**, **534**
`\showhyphens` (hyph.-disp. com.), **84**
`\showidx` (pack.), **311**, **453**
`\showkeys` (pack.), **257**, **313**
 options, **257**

- \showthe (value-examination com.), 113, 377, 378, 534
shrinkable lengths, 56, 101, 102, 377, 406, 407, 413, 530
side-setting, math symbols, 194–195
sidebars, in **beamer** presentations, 328, 331, 343
\sideset (math com.), 194–195
\Sigma (Σ Greek char.), 502
\sigma (σ Greek char.), 502
\signature (letter com.), 309
\sim (\sim binary rel.), 503
\eqsim (\simeq binary rel.), 503
simple alignment, of formulas, 31, 30–31
\sin (sin math op.), 26, 170, 172, 196, 510
single
 guillemet, 519
 quote, 11
 keys, 9, 23, 62, 75
 text symbols, 519
single quotation, 519
single-lined boxes, *see under* boxes
\sinh (sinh math op.), 172, 510
size
 of files
 PDF, 318
 PostScript, 317, 319
 of fonts, 55, 89, 93, 93–94, 123, 517
 commands for, *see under* font
 commands
 document class options for, 297, 306
 in math, 199
 of hyperlinks in PDF files, 322
 of math delimiters, 168–170, 184
 of paper, document class options for, 298, 306
\s1 (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 94, 95
slanted (font shape), 88, 90, 91, 94, 95, 123, 156, 516
and italic correction, 92
context dependence of, 91
slashed L's and O's (l, L, ø, Ø), 81, 515
slides, *see under* presentations
\slides (obs. doc. class), 303, 529
\slshape (font shape com. dec.), 90, 91, 92, 94, 95, 123, 516
\slshape (font shape env.), 123
slugs, 13, 96, 249, 300, 307
\SMALL (font size com.), 93, 93, 517
\Small (font size com.), 93, 93, 517
\small (font size com.), 93, 93, 517
small caps (font shape), 88, 90, 91, 123, 516
for abbreviations and acronyms, 91, 480
\smaller (font size com.), 94
\smallfrown (\smallfrown binary rel.), 504
\smallint (\smallint math sym.), 508
 (subsid. math env.), 235
\smallsetminus (\smallsetminus math op.), 506
\smallskip (spacing com.), 104
\smallsmile (\smallsmile binary rel.), 504
\smash (spacing com.), 115, 201
 optional argument of, 201
\smile (\smile binary rel.), 503
Snow, Wynter, 553, 560
Solaris, *see* UNIX
solid boxes, 113–114, *see also* struts
\solution (**beamer** distr. directory), 358
\somedefs (pack.), 313
sort keys, 455–456
 case sensitivity of, 462
sorting, of index entries, 455–456
source files, 4–5, 5, 7–8, 9, 18, 35, 51, 52, 64, 82, 87, 145, 271, 415, 447, 461, 473, 496, 525
errors in, 19–22, 491, 498, 534
naming of, 4, 44
platform independence of, 3, 9
putting on the Internet, 317–323
 disadvantages of, 317
readability of, 19, 65, 154, 166, 363–367, 379, 415
structure of, *see also* document
style parameters, *see* styles,
 document parameters for
typesetting, 4, 9, 12, 20, 28, 63, 74, 529, 534
white space in, 19
sources, for fonts, 546
\sp (math superscript com.), 159, 183
space bar, 9, 11, 53, 63, 325, 334
spaces
 at the beginning of a line, 64, 103
 at the end of a line, 64, 65, 84
blue, *see also* tie, unbreakable
 spaces, nonbreakable spaces, 76
consist of glue, 530
expanding, 106
filling lines with, 106
in arguments of commands, 85
\bibitem, 266
\cite, 264
\index, 462
in command definitions, 367
in command names, 69
in delimited commands, 379–380
in math environments, 153

- spaces (*continued*)
 - in `tabular` environments, 135
 - in user-defined commands, 313
 - in `\verb` commands, 148
 - in `verbatim` environments, 146
 - interword (`_`), 11, 66, 70, 102, 190, 520
 - multiple, act as one, 19, 64, 71
 - separating words with, 11, 64, 383, 427
 - suppressing, 383, 458
 - terminating commands with, 19, 69, 154
 - typed for readability, 22, 65, 135, 367
 - unbreakable (~ tie), 11, 28, 63, 66, 75, 76, 99, 520
 - absorb spaces, 76
 - in BIBTeX databases, 427
 - with cross-references, 257
 - visible (`_`), 11, 63
 - and `\verb*` command, 148
- spacing
 - between characters, 530
 - between dots with `\hdotsfor` commands, 233
 - between math symbols, 187–192
 - commands, *see* spacing commands
 - determined by document classes, 102
 - horizontal
 - adjusting, 188
 - in math, 19, 154–156, 187–192, 233, 236
 - in text, 11, 102–104, 114, 126, 414, 513, 520
 - interword, 11, 64–67, 70, 76, 102, 383, 427, 520
 - preventing removal of, 103
 - in text, 102–106
 - intercolumn, 209, 220, 220
 - in aligned math environments, 224, 228
 - in `tabular` environments, 136
 - interline, 242, 370, 482
 - adjusting, 95, 98–99, 104, 114
 - double, 99
 - rules
 - and delimited commands, 379–380
 - for commands, 69, 154
 - in arguments of `\index` commands, 462
 - in math, 19, 154–156, 187–192, 200–201
 - in text, 11, 19, 64–67, 102–106
 - in `\text` commands, 154
- vertical
 - adding to table of contents, 474
 - adjusting, 56, 139, 481
 - adjusting with the `setspace` package, 99
 - in boxes, 115
 - in indexes, 267, 449
 - in math, 200–201
 - in text, 15, 104–105, 201, 377, 474, 482, 486
 - preventing removal of, 105
 - using the `setspace` package, 99
- spacing commands
 - avoiding direct use of, 481
 - horizontal, *see* horizontal spacing
 - vertical, *see* vertical spacing
- `\spadesuit` (♠ math sym.), 508
- `\spbreve` (˘ math accent), 177, 177, 512
- `\spcheck` (ˇ math accent), 177, 183, 512
- `\spddot` (˙˙ math accent), 177, 512
- `\spddot` (˙ math accent), 177, 177, 512
- `\spdot` (˙ math accent), 177, 512
- special
 - braces, 18, 49, 72, 73, 152, 153, 157
 - balancing, 72
 - characters, 15, 63, 76, 77, 77, 78, 515–519
 - in `\index` commands, 457
 - keys, 9, 17, 63, 76
 - spelling checkers, 48, 495
 - `\sphat` (^\math accent), 177, 512
 - `\sphericalangle` (⟨ math sym.), 508
 - Spivak, Michael D., 522, 545
 - `\split` (subsidi. math align. env.), 208, 211, 230–231, 298
 - and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 243
 - numbering of equations within, 230–231
 - rules for, 231
- splitting
 - documents into multiple files, 476–479
 - formulas across lines, 212–214
- `\sptilde` (˜ math accent), 177, 512
- `\sqcap` (⊓ math op.), 506
- `\sqcup` (⊔ math op.), 506
- `\sqrt` (√ x math com.), 19, 27, 161
 - optional argument of, 70
- `\sqsubset` (⊑ binary rel.), 503
- `\sqsubseteq` (⊑ binary rel.), 503
- `\sqsupset` (⊒ binary rel.), 503
- `\sqsupseteq` (⊒ binary rel.), 503
- `\square` (□ math sym.), 508
- square roots, 27, 161

- \ss (SS), 81, 515
 \ss (ß), 81, 515
 stacking math symbols, 192–193
 Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML), 523
 \star (* math op.), 506
 starred commands and environments, *see under* *-form and specific commands and environments
 start of chapters, document class options for, 468
 \stepcounter (counter-incr. com.), 402
 sterlign (\mathcal{L} text sym.), 519
 \stop (interactive control com.), 535
 stretchable
 horizontal braces, 178–179
 lengths, 102, 378, 406, 407, 530
 lines, 179
 math arrows, 179, 240–242
 math delimiters, 167–168
 math symbols, 178–180
 vertical spacing, in displayed text environments, 406
 STRING (bibl. entry type), 436
 structural commands
 \appendix, 255, 467
 \backmatter, 467
 \chapter, 253, 255, 304, 466, 466, 467
 \frontmatter, 467
 hierarchy of, 252, 466
 in presentations, 350
 \mainmatter, 467
 optional arguments of, 253
 \paragraph, 252, 466
 \paragraph*, 253
 \part, 253, 304, 466
 provided by **amsart** doc. class, 254
 provided by **article** doc. class, 254
 provided by book doc. classes, 466–467
 \section, 46, 252–255, 467
 \section*, 46, 253, 467
 \subparagraph, 252, 466
 \subsection, 46, 252, 466, 467
 \subsection*, 46, 467
 \subsubsection, 46, 252, 466
 \subsubsection*, 46
 syntax of, 253
 structures, theorem-like, *see* proclamations
 struts, 114, 139, 200
 style (sty) files, *see also* packages, 250, 366, 386–392
 commands in, 386
 terminating, 392
 style files, *BIBTEX*, *see* bst
 styles
 bibliographical, *see also* bst, 266
 document parameters for, 552
 for counters, 87, 123, 382, 401, 400–401, 411
 of pages, 268–270
 of proclamations, 129–131, 524
 of tables, 140
 text environments, 123
 subarray (subsidi. math env.), 161, 176
 subentries, in indexes, 267, 449, 453, 454, 456
 subequations (disp. math env.), 203, 204, 219, 401
 subformulas
 indentation of, 217
 rules for, 215–217, 223–224
 shorthand commands for, 364–366, 372–373
 \subitem (index com.), 267, 449
 \subjclass (top matter com.)
 optional arguments of, 279
 rules for using, 279
 \subjclassname (redef. name), 376
 subject classifications, AMS, 279
 \subparagraph (struct. com.), 252, 466
 \subparagraph (counter), 399
 subscripts, math, 23, 25, 158–159, 161, 182
 as limits, 25, 161, 171–176, 182, 299
 as multiline limits, 176
 double, 199
 font size of, 199
 with horizontal braces, 178
 \subsection (struct. com.), 46, 252, 350, 466, 467
 subsection (counter), 399
 \subsection* (struct. com.), 46, 467
 \subsectionname (**hyperref** redef. name), 323
 \Subset (\Subset binary rel.), 504
 \subset (\subset binary rel.), 503
 \subseteqq (\subseteqq binary rel.), 503
 \subseteqqq (\subseteqqq binary rel.), 504
 \subsetneq (\subsetneq neg. binary rel.), 505
 \subsetneqq (\subsetneqq neg. binary rel.), 505
 subsidiary math environments
 aligned, 211, 227–230, 243
 alignedat, 227–230, 243
 and \allowdisplaybreaks
 commands, 243
 array, 208, 210, 229, 232, 236–238, 312, 313, 523, 551, 552
 Bmatrix, 235
 bmatrix, 235

- subsidiary math environments
(continued)
 cases, 33, 208, 210, **239**
 CD, 240–242
 for aligning formulas, 208, **209**,
227–231, 243, 298
 gathered, 211, 227–230, 243
 matrix, 25–26, 208, 210, 231, **232–238**
 numbering of, 230, 231
 page breaks in, 242
 pmatrix, 25–26, **235**
 smallmatrix, 235
 split, 208, 211, **230–231**, 243, 298
 subarray, 161, 176
 Vmatrix, 183, **235**
 vmatrix, 25, 26, **235**
\substack (math com.), 161, 176, **176**
 substitution, of fonts, 94, 318, 484
 subsubentries, in indexes, 267, 449, **454**,
 456
\subsubitem (index com.), 267, 449
\subsubsection (struct. com.), 46, **252**,
 466
 subsubsection (counter), 399
\subsubsection* (struct. com.), 46
\subsubsectionname (redef. name), 322
 subtraction, 22, 63, 157
\succ (\succ binary rel.), 503
\succapprox (\gtrapprox binary rel.), 504
\succcurlyeq (\succcurlyeq binary rel.), 504
\succeq (\succeq binary rel.), 503
\succnapprox (\gtrapprox binary rel.), 505
\succneqq (\succneqq binary rel.), 505
\succnsim (\succnsim binary rel.), 505
\succsim (\succsim binary rel.), 504
\sum (\sum large math op.), 26, 175, 198,
 511
 with primes, 194
\sumlimits (opt. of amsmath pack.), **299**
 sums, 26, 27, 174
\sup (sup math op.), 172, **510**
 superscripts, **23**, 25, **158–159**, 161, 177,
 182
 as limits, **25**, **161**, 171, 174–176, 182
 as multiline limits, 176
 in math
 as limits, 299
 font size of, 199
 with horizontal braces, 178
 in text, 311, **519**
 support, technical, *see* technical support
\suppressfloats (float com.), 260
 suppressing
 creation of auxiliary files, 486, 531
 hyperlinks in PDF files, 322
 indents (\noindent com.), 99, 484
 italic correction, 92
 ligatures, **79**, 181, 365
 line breaks (\newlinebreak com.), 99
 loading of the amsmath package, 300
 numbering, 211, 215
 of equations, 30, 31, 157, 201, 211,
 213, 215, 218, 231, 270
 of first page of documents, 270
 of proclamations, 129, 130, 382
 of structural units, 46, 253, 467
\Overfull \hbox warnings, 96
 page breaks (\nopagebreak com.),
 100
 placement of floats, 260
 q.e.d. symbol, 132
 spaces, 383, 458
\Upset (\supseteq binary rel.), **504**
\upset (\supset binary rel.), **503**
\upseteq (\supseteq binary rel.), **503**
\upseteqq (\supseteqq binary rel.), **504**
\upsetneq (\supsetneq binary rel.), **505**
\upsetneqq (\supsetneqq binary rel.), **505**
\surd (\sqrt math sym.), **508**
 Sutor, Robert, 558
 Swanson, Ellen, 217, 553, 560
\swapnumbers (theorem-style com.), 131
\swallow (\swarrow math arrow), **507**
\symbol (symbol com.), **77**, 311
 symbol alphabets, math, **197**
 blackboard bold, 197
 calligraphic, 197
 Euler Fraktur, 197
 Greek, 197
 symbolic references, showing in margins,
257, 313
 symbolic referencing, 28, *see also*
 cross-referencing, 29, **255–258**,
 531
 symbols
 as footnote indicators, 87
 math, 19, 20, 63, 131, 177, 182, 240,
 249, 294, 311, **501–513**
 alphabets, **197**
 and delimiters, 24, 166, 168
 bold, **197–199**, 301, 312
 building new, 183, **192–195**, 372
 classification of, **188–189**, 195
 declaring types of, 195
 end of proof, 113, 374
 in text, 365
 large, 227–229
 negated, 194–195
 shorthand commands for, 364
 side-setting, 194–195

- sizes of, 199
spacing of, 187–192
stacking, 192–193
stretchable, 178–180
suppressing, 131
text, 76, 77, 80, 278, 516, 518, 519
SymbolTables.pdf (sample file), 4, 9, 15, 19
synchronization (inverse search), 5, 494, 498
systems of equations, 225–226
systems, operating, *see* Mac, PC, or UNIX
- T**
\t (^ tie text accent), 79, 516
T1 font encoding, 82, 519, 547
tab
 character, 63, 64, 68, 102
 Tab key, 9, 11, 63
Tab key, 9, 11, 63
tabbing (display text env.), 141–143, 551, 552
table (counter), 399
table (float env.), 258–259
 optional arguments of, 260, 486
 placement of, 484, 486
table* (float env.), 259
\tablename (redef. name), 376
 and **hyperref** package, 323
\tableofcontents (front-matter com.), 328, 473, 532
tables, 133–140, 141, 237, 259, 260, 313, 523, 551, 552
 captions in, 134, 259, 476
 fragile commands in, 74
 commands for, 135, 137–140, 259, 476
 cross-referencing of, 134
 designing, 140
 double-column, 259
 float controls, 134
 forcing typesetting of, 101
 hyphenation, 528
 intersection of lines in, 140, 313
 lists of, *see under* lists
 multiline entries in, 138
 multipage, 313
 numbering of, 258
 placement of, 484, 486
 style of, 140
 typeset inline, 133
tables of contents, 252, 321, 473–475
 adding a line to, 473–474
 adding vertical spacing to, 474
- auxiliary file (**toc**), 473, 487, 532
commands, 473, 474
depth of, 403
fragile commands in, 74, 475
in frames, 328
in presentations, 358
typesetting, 473–475
tabs, setting, 141
tabular (table env.), 78, 133–140, 237, 259, 312, 313, 523, 551, 552
arguments of, 135
 optional, 135
breaking lines in, 135
column-formatting in, 136
horizontal lines in, 135, 137
intercolumn space in, 136
\parbox in, 111
rules for, 135
vertical lines in, 135
width of columns in, 136
tabularx (pack.), 313
\tag, 29, 201, 202, 211, 213, 215, 218, 230, 231
\tag*, 202
tags (names for equations), 29, 201–204, 211, 213, 215, 218, 230, 231
top-or-bottom placement of, 298
\tan (tan math op.), 172, 510
\tanh (tanh math op.), 172, 510
Tantau, Till, 325, 359, 552, 560
\tau (τ Greek char.), 502
\tbinom (inline-style binomial com.), 160
tbtags (doc. class opt.), 298
technical reports, in **BIBTeX** database files, 434–435
technical support
 on the Internet, 542
 provided by **TeX** users groups, 541
 provided by the AMS, 542
TECHREPORT (bibl. entry type), 425, 434–435
template.bib (sample bibl. file), 423, 437, 446
templates, 271, 306
 bibliographical, 47, 261, 423, 437, 446
 customizing
 for AMS document classes, 294–297
 for articles, 44–45
 ggamsart.tpl, 297
 myams.tpl, 294–297
personalized
 making read-only, 297

- terminating
 captions, 476
 commands, 14, 19, 69, 70, 80, 147,
 154
 environments, 68
 fields in BIBTeX database entries, 445
 files, 392, 478
 lines, 85, 159, 367
 paragraphs, 64, 99
 sentences, 11, 64–67, 279
- TeX, 521, 525
 commands, 378, 380
 to avoid using, 481
 commands in L^AT_EX, 482
 distribution, 528
 extensibility of, 525
 files, portability of, 9
 history of, 521–525
 implementations, 489
 inner workings of, 528
 inputs folders, 540, 544–545
 layers of, 528–529
 omissions in discussion of, 552
 Plain, 528
 programming in, 525, 553
 resources on the Internet, 542
 source files, *see under* source files
 structure of, 528
 users groups, *see* TeX users groups
 and TUG
- tex** (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 499
- \TeX** (TeX com.), 80
- TeX users groups, *see also* TUG, 537–542,
 547
 international, 541
- tex4ht** (opt. of **hyperref** pack.), 320
- TeX Live (TUG DVD/CD), xxvi, 489, 490,
 495, 541
- texmf** (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 499
- TeXShop** (L^AT_EX front end for Mac), xxvi,
 9, 11, 53, 326, 496
 customizing, 496
 productivity tools in, 498
 with BIBTeX, 442
 with *MakeIndex*, 461
- text, 7
 accents, 69, 79, 516
 \\ in, 98
 blocks, width of, 270
 boxes, *see* text boxes
 centering, *see* centering text, **center**
 (text align. env.), *and*
 \centering
 editors, xxvi, 4, 5, 9, 18, 48, 55, 63,
 84, 88, 365, 490, 526
- framing, 109
 in math mode, 19, 27, 83, 99, 107,
 154, 162–163, 181, 196, 226–227,
 241, 301
 specifying fonts for, 163
- in tables
 multicolumn, 137–140
 multiline, 138
- mode, 7
- plain, 9
- spacing in, 102–106
- style commands, *see* text style
 commands
- symbols, *see* text symbols
- typing, 7–15, 61–115
- user-defined commands for, 366
- using math symbols in, 365
- white space in, 102–106
- \text** (box com.), xxvi, 27, 33, 83, 99,
 107, 162–163, 181, 206, 241, 301
 spacing rules in, 154
- text boxes, 107–115
 alignment of contents in, 107, 111
 behave as single characters, 107
 commands for
 \framebox, 109
 \makebox, 107, 108, 109, 111, 113
 \mbox, xxvi, 107
 \parbox, 107, 109, 110, 111, 138,
 405
 \raisebox, 115
 \rule, 113, 114, 140
 \text, xxvi, 27, 33, 83, 99, 107,
 154, 162–163, 181, 206, 241, 301
- environments for **minipage**, 107, 109,
 112, 383, 384
- framed, 109–110
 measurements of, 405
- measuring, *see* measurements
- single line, 107–109, 163
- vertical alignment of, 111, 115
- text environments, 117–149
 and stretchable vertical space, 406
 blank lines in, 118
 displayed, *see* displayed text
 environments
- for abstracts, *see* abstract
- for alignment, 8, 68, 106, 124, 134,
 227, 407, 414
- for bibliographies, *see*
 thebibliography
- for boxes, *see under* text boxes
- for comments, *see* comment
- for documents, *see* document
- for figures, *see* figures

for indexes, *see theindex*
 for letters, *see letter*
 for lists, *see list text environments*
 for proofs, *see proof*
 for styles, *see under text style*
 for tables, *see tables*
 rules for, 118
 text mode, **62**
 text style commands
 avoiding direct use of, 480
 \emph, 8, 14, 68, 90, **91**, 337, 516
 \textbf, 14, 73, 90, **93**, 163, 301, 337, 516
 \textit, 90, **91**, 337, 516
 \textmd, 90, **93**, 516
 \textnormal, **90**, 90, 163, 516
 \textrm, 90, 301, 516
 \textsc, 90, **91**, 516
 \textsf, 90, 516
 \textsl, 90, **91**, 516
 \texttt, 14, 76, 90, 516
 \textup, 90, **91**, 516
 text style environments
 bfseries, 123
 em, 123
 itshape, 123
 rmfamily, 123
 scshape, 123
 sffamily, 123
 slshape, 123
 ttfamily, 123
 upshape, 123
 text symbols, 77, 81
 commands, 76, 77, 80, 278, 516, 518, 519
 typing, 74–80
 \textasciicircum (^ circumflex), 81, 518
 \textasciitilde (~ tilde), 519
 \textasteriskcentered (* asterisk), 77, 81, 518
 \textbackslash (\\ backslash), **76–77**, 81, 518
 \textbar (| vertical bar), 77, 81, 518
 \textbf (font weight com.), 14, 73, 90, **93**, 163, 301, 337, 516
 \textbullet (• bullet), 81, 518
 \textcircled (@), **80**, 81, 518
 \textcolor (beamer com.), 349
 \textcompwordmark (lig.-suppr. com.), **79**, 365, 415
 \textemdash (— em dash), 81, 518
 \textendash (– em dash), 81, 518
 \textexcldown (¡ exclamation mark), 62
 \textgreater (> greater than), 81, 518
 \textit (font shape com.), 90, **91**, 337, 516
 \textless (< less than), 81, 518
 \textmd (font weight com.), 90, **93**, 516
 \textnormal (font shape com.), **90**, 90, 163, 516
 \TextOrMath (text and math mode com.), 311
 \textperiodcentered (· midpoint), 81, 518
 \textquestiondown (¿ question mark), 81, 518
 \textquotedbl (Eur. quot. mark), 519
 \textquotedblleft (“ left double quote), 81, 518
 \textquotedblright (” right double quote), 81, 518
 \textquotingleft (‘ left single quote), 519
 \textquoteright (’) Eur. quot. mark, 519
 right single quote, 519
 \textregistered (® registered trademark), 81, 518
 \textrm (font shape com.), 90, 301, 516
 \textsc (font shape com.), **90**, **91**, 516
 \textsf (font shape com.), 90, 516
 \textsl (font shape com.), 90, **91**, 516
 \textstyle (math font size com.), **199**, 204
 \textsubscript, 251, 311
 \textsuperscript (ª), 311, 519
 \texttrademark (™ trademark), 519
 \texttt (font shape com.), 14, 76, 90, 516
 \textup (font shape com.), **90**, **91**, 516
 textures (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 320
 \textvisiblespace, 11, 63, **64**, 519
 \textwidth (length com.), 270, 398, 404
 tfm (L^AT_EX font metric file), 529
 \tfrac ($\frac{x}{y}$), 158, 200
 \TH (Thorn Eur. char.), 519
 \th (thorn Eur. char.), 519
 \thanks (top matter com.), 44, 87, 279, 281, 296, 304
 \the (value expansion com.), 80, 87, 113, 400
 thebibliography (bibliography env.), 40, 47–48, 66, **261–267**, 407, 437, 446
 argument of, 263, 266
 in `bbl` files, 442
 \thechapter (the value of counter chapter), 401
 \thefootnote (the value of counter footnote), 87, 88

- theindex** (index env.), 267, 407, 449, 459
 commands in, 267, 449
- themes** (beamer distr. directory), 356
- themes**, for beamer presentations, 328, 356–357
 Berkeley, 328, 331, 332, 356
 color options, 357
 Warsaw, 331, 332, 356
- theorem** (proclamation env.), 37, 52, 54, 125, 128, 343, 384
 body of, 46
 logical design of, 52
 visual design of, 52
- theorem** (pack.), 313
- theorem-like structures**, *see*
 proclamations
- \theoremname (hyperref redef. name), 323
- \theoremstyle* (procl. com.), 37, 129–131
- \theoremstyle (procl. com.), 129–131
- \theparentequation (the value of counter parentequation), 401
- \therefore (∴ binary rel.), 504
- \thesection (the value of counter section), 401
- theses, in BIBTEX database files, 433–434
- \thesubsection (the value of counter subsection), 401
- \Theta (Θ Greek char.), 502
- \theta (θ Greek char.), 502
- \thickapprox (≈ binary rel.), 504
- \thicksim (similarity binary rel.), 504
- \thickspace (spacing com.), 190, 513, 520
- \thinspace (spacing com.), 25, 67, 75, 188, 190, 190, 513, 520
- third-party packages, *see* specific packages
- \thispagestyle (set page style), 270
- thorn (Eur. char), 519
- Thorup, Kresten K., 403
- tie (‐ spacing com.), 11, 28, 63, 66, 75, 76, 99, 520
 absorbs spaces, 76
 in BIBTEX databases, 427
 with cross-references, 28, 257
- tie (‐ text accent), 79, 516
- TikZ, 552
- tilde (˜)
 text accent, 79, 516
 text symbol, 519
- \tilde (˜ math accent), 25, 177, 512
- \time (time com.), 80
- time commands
 \date, 44
 \day, 80
 \month, 80
 \time, 80
 \today, 14, 44, 70–71, 80, 148, 275, 304, 380, 548
 \year, 80
- Times, in LATEX documents, 544–545
- \times (× math op.), 23, 158, 506
- times (pack.), 544
- times.sty (PSNFSS distr. file), 544
- \Tiny (font size com.), 93, 93, 517
- \tiny (font size com.), 93, 93, 517
- \title (top matter com.), 37, 44, 106, 249, 297, 304, 331, 469
 optional arguments of, 273, 274, 282, 297
- \title (BIBTEX database field), 424–426, 433
- title pages, 273, 535
 commands for, 54
 document class options for, 249, 299, 300, 307
 environments for, 469
 footnotes on, 87
 of articles, 37, 249, 251
 of books, 467, 469
 of presentations, 55
- \titlepage (doc. class opt.), 249, 299, 307, 468
- \titlepage (beamer com.), 328
- \titlepage (front matter env.), 469
- titles
 in bibliographies
 rules for typing, 426–427
 in running heads, 274, 297
 of articles, 44, 273, 297
 of structural commands, 252
 fragile commands in, 74
- \to (→ math arrow), 507
- \toc (table of contents files), 473–475, 487, 532
 commands in, 475
- \tocdepth (counter), 403, 473
- \today (time com.), 14, 44, 70–71, 80, 148, 275, 304, 380, 548
- tokens, 529
- tools (LATEX distr. directory), 311–313
 packages in, 312–313
- tools (pack.), 312
- \top (⊤ math sym.), 508
- top matter, 36, 37–38, 249, 251, 272
 article information, 37–38, 44–46
 of AMS documents, 273–275

- commands, 37, 44, 46, 80, 87, 106, 270, 273, **273–281**, 282, 284, 285, 296, 297, 331, 469
 blank lines in, 273
 examples of, 282–285
 with multiple authors, 281
 customizing templates, 44, 294
 editing, 44–46
 is document-class specific, 251
 of AMS documents, 273–285
 AMS information, 279–281
 author information, 275–279
 errors with, 284–285
 examples, 282–285
 with multiple authors, 281
 of books, 251
 of presentations, 53–55, 326–327, 331
 with multiple authors, 46
 top-or-bottom, placement of tags, 298
`topmat.tpl` (sample file), 282
`\topsep` (length com.), **407**, 408
`\totalheight` (length com.), 108, **108**, 110, 111
`trace` (pack.), 313
 trademark text symbols ($^{\text{TM}}$ ®), 81, 518, 519
`trans` (beamer doc. class opt.), 358
 translation, of line ending characters, 63
`\translator` (top matter com.), 274
`\triangle` (Δ math sym.), **508**
`\triangledown` (∇ math sym.), **508**
`\triangleleft` (\triangleleft math op.), **506**
`\trianglelefteq` (\trianglelefteq binary rel.), **504**
`\triangleq` (\triangleq binary rel.), **504**
`\triangleright` (\triangleright math op.), **506**
`\trianglerighteq` (\trianglerighteq binary rel.), **504**
`trivlist` (list text env.), 414
`\tt` (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 94
`\ttfamily` (font shape com. dec.), 90, 123, 142, 516
`\ttfamily` (font shape env.), 123
 TUG (T_EX Users Group), 489, 490, 495, 537, 541–542
TUGboat, 541, 553
 two-letter font commands, *see under* font commands
`\twocolumn` (doc. class opt.), 85, 101, 259, **299**, 307, 308
 and footnotes, 313
`\twocolumn` (double-column com.), 101
`\twoheadleftarrow` (\leftrightarrow math arrow), **507**
`\twoheadrightarrow` (\rightarrow math arrow), **507**
`\twoside` (doc. class opt.), 85, 249, **299**, 307, 308, 468
 type (BBITEX database field), 425
 type foundries, 544, **546**
 types
 of commands, 73–74
 of math symbols, **188**, 198
 declaring, 195
 typeset
 example articles
 `intrart.tex`, 41–43
 `sampart.tex`, 285–288
 files, 5, 5, 271, 443
 DVI format, 318, 530
 PDF format, 5, 259, 318, 326, 530
 typesetting
 indexes, 459–461
 source files, 4, 9, 12, 20, 28, 63, 74, 534
 tables of contents, 473–475
 with LATEX, **522**, 526, 527, 529–534
 typewriter style
 document font family, **89**
 font shape, 14, 76, 78, 90, **123**, 142, 365, 516, 544
 fonts, 88
 in math, **196**, 196, 512
 typing
 bibliographic entries, 426–437
 accents in, 427
 names in, 426
 rules for, 443–446
 titles in, 426–427
 books, 465–487
 exercises, 476
 footnotes, 87–88
 math, 17–33, 151–206
 poetry, 144–145
 programs, 141–143, 145–147
 quotations, 143–144
 text, 7–15, 61–115
 symbols, 74–80
 typographical
 errors, 48
 rules for
 abbreviations and acronyms, 91
 initials, 67
- U**
`\u` breve text accent (\hat{v}), **79**, 516
 UK TUG (United Kingdom T_EX Users Group), 541
 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), 542
`\ulcorner` (\lceil math delimiter), **167**, 509
 Umeki, Hideo, 270

- umlaut („ text accent), 9, 15, 79, 516, 548
- unbreakable
 - hyphens, 83
 - spaces (˜ tie), 11, 28, 63, 66, 75, 76, 99, 520
 - absorb spaces, 76
 - in **BiBTeX** databases, 427
 - with cross-references, 257
- \underbrace (math sym.), 178
 - with a subscript, 178
- underdot text accent (., 79, 516)
- \underleftarrow (\xleftarrow{x} math arrow), 179
- \underleftrightarrow (\xleftrightarrow{x} math arrow), 179
- \underline (\underline{x} math line sym.), 179
- \underrightarrow (\xrightarrow{x} math arrow), 179
- underscore (_), 77
 - text symbol, 81, 518
 - in e-mail addresses, 278
- underscore text accent (_, 79, 516)
- \underset (symbol-building com.), 183, 192
- Unicode, 554
- units
 - absolute, *see under* absolute
 - dimensional, *see under* dimensional units
 - logical, *see under* logical
 - math, *see* mu
 - relative, *see under* relative
- UNIX, 3, 9, 522, 554
 - FTP clients, 538
 - LATEX** implementations, 3, 442, 461, 489
 - line ending characters, 9
- \unlhd (\trianglelefteq math op.), 506
- unmarked footnotes, 44, 279
- unnumbered
 - environments, 215
 - equations, 30, 31, 157, 201, 202, 210, 211, 213, 215, 218, 231, 328
 - items, 119
 - math environments, 211
 - proclamations, 129, 130, 382
 - structural units, 46, 253, 467
- unpacked (**LATEX** distr. directory), 311, 540
- UNPUBLISHED (bibl. entry type), 435
- \unrhd (\trianglerighteq math op.), 506
- \Uparrow (\uparrow)
 - math arrow, 507
 - math delimiter, 167, 509
- \uparrow (\uparrow)
 - math arrow, 507
 - math delimiter, 167, 509
- \upharpoonleft (\upharpoonleftarrow math arrow), 507
- \upharpoonright (\upharpoonrightarrow math arrow), 507
- \uplus (\uplus math op.), 506
- \upn (font shape com.), 156
- uppercase counter styles
 - letters (\alph), 401
 - roman numerals (\roman), 401
- \upref (pack.), 300, 301
- upright (font shape), 28, 88, 89, 90, 91, 123, 156, 382, 412, 516
 - context dependence of, 91
- \uproot (root-adjustment com.), 162
- \upshape (font shape com. dec.), 90, 91, 123, 382, 412, 516
 - upshape (font shape env.), 123
- \Upsilon (Υ Greek char.), 502
- \upsilon (υ Greek char.), 502
- \upuparrows ($\upuparrow\downarrow$ math arrow), 507
- \urcorner (\ulcorner math delimiter), 167, 509
- \URL (bibl. com.), 425
- URL (Uniform Resource Locator), 278, *see also* hyperlinks
- \urladdr (top matter com.), 278, 279, 296, 323
- \usecolortheme (beamer com.), 357
- \usecounter (list counter com.), 411
- \usefonttheme (beamer com.), 357
- \usepackage (preamble com.), 35, 53, 70, 249, 294, 320, 326, 366, 386, 450, 534
 - can load multiple packages, 250
- user-defined commands, 36, **364–380**, 480
 - arguments of, 370–374
 - as shorthand, 364–374
 - as tokens, 529
 - command declarations in, 90
 - scope of, **367–368**, 382
 - defining, 87, 99, 132, 139, 266, 267, 364, 366, 373–375, 400
 - in preamble, 250
 - delimited, 378–380
 - for environments, 365
 - for indexing, 371, 454
 - for subformulas, 371–373

- for text, 366
 invoking, 366
 multiple arguments of, 70
 optional arguments of, 374
 rules, 366, 367
 short arguments, 373–374
 with `\def`, 378
 user-defined environments, 380–385, 479,
 482, 529
 defining, 381
 for custom lists, 406–415
 optional arguments of, 384
 short arguments, 385
 users groups, 537, 539, 541–542, 547
 international, 541
`\usetheme` (beamer com.), 328, 356
 UNIX, 479
- V**
`\v` caron text accent (\check{v}), 79, 516
`\value` (value of counter), 402
 values, of counters, 87, 402
 printing, 80, 113, 400
 van Oostrum, Piet, 270, 537
`\varDelta` (Δ Greek char.), 502
`\varEpsilon` (ε Greek char.), 502
`\varGamma` (Γ Greek char.), 502
`\varinjlim` (\varinjlim math op.), 172, 510
`\varioref` (pack.), 258, 313
`\varkappa` (\varkappa Greek char.), 502
`\varLambda` (Λ Greek char.), 502
`\varliminf` (\varliminf math op.), 172, 510
`\varlimsup` (\varlimsup math op.), 172
`\varnothing` (empty set symbol), 508
`\varOmega` (Ω Greek char.), 502
`\varPhi` (\varPhi Greek char.), 502
`\varphi` (φ Greek char.), 502
`\varPi` (\varPi Greek char.), 502
`\varpi` (ϖ Greek char.), 502
`\varprojlim` (\varprojlim math op.), 172, 510
`\varpropto` (\propto binary rel.), 504
`\varPsi` (\varPsi Greek char.), 502
`\varrho` (ϱ Greek char.), 502
`\varSigma` (\varSigma Greek char.), 502
`\varsigma` (ς Greek char.), 502
`\varsubsetneq` (\subsetneq neg. binary rel.), 505
`\varsubsetneqq` (\subsetneqq neg. binary rel.), 505
`\varsupsetneq` (\supsetneq binary rel.), 505
`\varsupsetneqq` (\supsetneqq binary rel.), 505
`\varTheta` (\varTheta Greek char.), 502
`\vartheta` (ϑ Greek char.), 502
`\vartriangle` (\vartriangle math op.), 506
`\vartriangleleft` (\vartriangleleft math op.), 506
`\vartriangleright` (\vartriangleright math op.), 506
- `\varUpsilon` (\varUpsilon Greek char.), 502
`\varXi` (\varXi Greek char.), 502
`\vdash` (\vdash binary rel.), 504
`\vDash` (\vDash binary rel.), 504
`\dashv` (\dashv binary rel.), 503
`\vdots` (vertical ellipsis), 161, 235
`\vec` (\vec{x} math accent), 25, 177, 377, 512
`\vee` (\vee math op.), 506
`\veebar` (\veebar math op.), 506
`\verb` (inline verbatim com.), 147–149
 in aligned math environments, 148
 in argument of other commands, 148
 spaces in, 148
`\verb*` (inline verbatim com.), 148
 delimiters with, 147–149
`\verbatim` (disp. text env.), 145–147, 313,
 359, 523
 blank lines in, 146
 characters following, 146
 simulating with `\verb`, 148
`\verbatim` (pack.), 86, 87, 147, 313, 387
`\verse` (disp. text env.), 144, 407
 breaking lines in, 145
 versions
 of AMS packages and AMSFonts,
 300, 301, 524, 525, 533
 of L^AT_EX packages, 532–534
`\Vert` (\parallel math delimiter), 167, 509
`\vert` ($|$ math delimiter), 167, 509
 vertical
 alignment, of boxes, 111, 115
 bar ($|$ text symbol), 81, 518
 ellipses, 161, 235
 glue, 530
 lines
 in CD environments, 241
 in `\tabular` environments, 135
 math arrows, 241
 vertical spacing
 adding after `\backslash`, 15
 adding to table of contents, 474
 adjusting, 56
 with `\arraystretch`, 139
 with struts, 139
 adjusting with the `setspace`
 package, 99
 between marginal notes, 404
 between paragraphs, 404
 commands
`\bigskip`, 104
`\enlargethispage`, 101, 484, 487
`\medskip`, 104
`\smallskip`, 104
`\smash`, 115, 201, 201
 to avoid using, 481

vertical spacing
 commands (*continued*)
 \vfill (fill com.), 106
 \vphantom, 105
 \vspace, 104
 \vspace*, 105
 in boxes, 115
 in indexes, 267, 449
 in math mode, 200–201
 in text, 15, 104–105, 377, 474, 482,
 486
 preventing removal of, 105
 stretchable, 406
 using the `setspace` package, 99
 \vfill (space fill com.), 106
 viewers
 DVI, 526, 530, 539
 PDF, *see under* PDF
 viewing typeset files, 494, 530
 DVI format, 318, 530
 PDF format, 5, 259, 318, 530
virtex (TeX program), 528
 visible spaces (_), 11, 63
 and \verb* command, 148
Visual
 Guide, to multiline math formulas,
 207
visual
 design, 52–53, 247, 268–270, 358
 markup, 535
 guide, to multiline math formulas,
 208
Vmatrix (subsid. math env.), 183, 235
vmatrix (subsid. math env.), 25, 26, 235
volume (BIBTEX database field), 424, 425
 von, in bibliographic entries, 426
 \vphantom (spacing com.), 105
 \vspace (spacing com.), 104
 \vspace* (spacing com.), 105
vtex (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 320
 \Vvdash (\vdash binary rel.), 504

W
 warning messages, *see also* error
 messages
 about hyphenation, 96
Abstract should precede
 \maketitle in AMS document
 classes, 251
Characters dropped after
 \end{verbatim}, 146
\end occurred inside a group at
 level *x*, 72
\end occurred when \xxx on line
yy was incomplete, 478

generated by overlapping braces, 72
Label(s) may have changed, 256
 line numbers in, 12
 lines are too wide, 12–13, 96–97
No auxiliary output files, 531
Overfull \hbox, 12–13, 96–97, 530
 suppressing, 96
Underfull \vbox has occurred
 while \output is active, 530
Warning--missing field in label,
 444–446
 when using \NeedsTeXFormat, 250,
 386, 532
 with BIBTEX, 443–446
 in log (blg) files, 442
Warsaw (beamer theme), 331, 332, 356
Web, *see* Internet
\wedge (\wedge math op.), 506
 weight, of fonts, *see under* font
 environments, font commands
 and font declarations
 white space
 adjusting, 482
 and binary operations and relations,
 155
 between marginal notes, 404
 between paragraphs, 404
 commands, avoiding direct use of,
 481
 determined by document classes, 102
 horizontal, 68, 102, 105, 142, 154,
 189–191, 224, 225, 313, 368–369,
 513, 520
 in math mode, 186, 233, 236
 in text mode, 11, 19, 64–67,
 102–104, 106, 114, 126, 414
 in arguments of commands, 85
 in command definitions, 367
 in command names, 68
 in delimited commands, 379–380
 in math, 19, 51, 104–105, 154–156,
 187–192, 200–201
 adjusting, 104
 in source files, 154
 in `tabular` environments, 135
 in text, 11, 102–106, 383, 427, 513,
 520
 in \verb commands, 148
 in `verbatim` environments, 146
 suppressing, 383, 458
 terminating commands with, 69

- vertical, 102
 - adding to table of contents, 474
 - adjusting, 481
 - in math mode, 104–105, 200–201
 - in text mode, 15, 101, **104–106**, 201, 377, 482, 486
- \widehat** (\widehat{x} math accent), **177**, 177, 184, 512
- \widetilde** (\widetilde{x} math accent), **177**, 177, 512
- width
 - of columns in **tabular** environments, 136
 - of fonts, *see* font width
 - of text blocks, 270, 398, 404
 - of text boxes, 107–109, 405
- \width** (length com.), 108, **108**, 111
- Windows, *see also* PCs, *see under*
 - Microsoft
 - WinEdt (\LaTeX front end for PC), xxvi, 9, 11, 53, 490, 491, 492
 - installation, 490–491
 - productivity tools in, 494
 - with **BIB\TeX**, 442
 - with *MakeIndex*, 461
- word processors, 11
- words, are separated by spaces, 82
- work** (folder), 4, 10, 12, 14, 18, 20, 35, 39, 53, 164, 294, 320, 326–328, 331, 343, 438, 491
 - creating, 4
- World Wide Web, *see* Internet
- \wp** (\wp math sym.), **508**
- \wr** (\wr math op.), **506**
- wrapping, of lines
 - by e-mail clients, 65
- wrapping, of lines by text editors, 84
- X**
- \xcb** (exercise env.), **476**
- \xcolor** (pack.), 325, 348
 - options, 349
- \Xi** (Ξ Greek char.), **502**
- \xi** (ξ Greek char.), **502**
- \leftarrow** (stretchable math arrow), 179
- \rightarrow** (pack.), 258, 313
- \rightarrow** (stretchable math arrow), 179
- \xspace** (pack.), 313, 368–369
- \xy-pic** (pack.), 242
- Y**
- \&Y**, 525, 543
- \year** (time com.), 80
- \year** (**BIB\TeX** database field), 424, 425
- X**
- zero, specifying in arguments, 114
- \zeta** (ζ Greek char.), **502**
- ** (backslash), 167, 518
 - key, 9, 76
 - starts commands, 8, 14, **68**
 - text symbol, 76–77, 81, **509**
- _** (space), 11, 63, **64**
 - and **\verb*** command, 148
 - in arguments of commands, 85
 - in **\bibitem** labels, 266
 - in **\cite** commands, 264
 - in command names, 68
 - in **tabular** environments, 135
 - text symbol, 519
- _** (space com.), 11, **66**, 70, 102, **190**, 520
- !** (exclamation mark), 9, 62
 - float control, **260**, 486
 - in **\index** commands, 453, 454, 457
- _!** (exclamation mark, Spanish), 81, 515, 518
- _!** (negthinspace), **182**, **190**, 190, 513, 520
- _"** (‘ dieresis/umlaut text accent), 9, 15, 79, 516, 548
- _"** (double quote), 9, **75**
 - in **BIB\TeX** database fields, **424**, 445, 446
 - in **\index** commands, 457
 - key, 9, 63, 75
- _c** (European character), 548
- _s** (eszett), 548
- \#**
 - in user-defined commands, 371, 378
 - key, 9, 63
- \#** (# octothorp), 77, 81, 518
- \\$**
 - as inline math delimiter, 17, 18, 33, 72, 74, **152**
 - act as braces, 152
 - must be balanced, 153
 - in error messages, 20, 51, 147, 153, 154, 157, 233
 - key, 9, 63
- \\$_** (\$ dollar sign), 9, 77, 81, 518
- \\$\\$**
 - in error messages, 51
 - \TeX** displayed math delimiter, 152

- %
 - as comment character, 6, 10, 19, 21, 61, **85–86**, 141, 294, 458
 - in BibTeX databases, 86, 443
 - key, 9, 63
- \% (% percent), 9, 61, 77, 81, 86, **518**
 - in e-mail addresses, 278
- &
 - as alignment point, 30, 31, 216, 218, 220, 221
 - as column separator, 25, 135, 220, 221, 231, 236
 - key, 9, 63
- \& (& ampersand), 77, 81, **518**
- \&&, alignment point for annotations, 32
- \' (right single quote), 9, 11, 62, **75**, **519**
 - for primes ('), 23, 159, 194
- \` (` acute text accent), 79, **516**
- \` (start inline math mode), 18, 74
 - acts as special brace, 152, 153
 - must be balanced, 153
- (
 - as math delimiter ((), 167, 509
 - in index entries, 455
 - key, 8, 62
- \) (end inline math mode), 18, 74
 - acts as special brace, 152, 153
 - must be balanced, 153
-)
 - as math delimiter (()), 167, 509
 - in index entries, 455
 - key, 8, 62
- * (* asterisk), 77
 - interactive prompt, 113, 376–378, **534**
 - key, 8, 63
- ** prompt, 534
- *-form
 - of commands, 46, **69**, 98, 101, 103, 105, 129, 130, 148, 173, 195, 196, 242, 253, 322, 373, 382, 385, 439, 467, 473
 - of environments, 157, 201, 211, 213, 215, 231, 259
- + key, 8, 63
- + (plus), 22, 63, 157, 188, 191, 192, 213, 216–218
 - as binary operation, 506
- + and – rule, 188, 191, 192, 217, 218
 - and subformulas, 216
 - in multiline environments, 213
- \, (thinspace), 25, 67, 75, 188, 190, 190, 513, **520**
- , (comma), 9, 62
 - and italic correction, 92
 - in \bibitem commands, 266
- \in BibTeX databases, 424, 425, 445
- use in formulas, 155
- (dash, hyphen, minus), 9, 22, 63, **75**, 76, 157, 188, 191, 192, 196, 216, 217
 - as binary operation, 506
 - in \hyphenation commands, 82
- \- (opt. hyphen), 13, 82, **82**, 96
- (– number ranges, en dash), **14**, **75**, **81**, 518
 - in BibTeX databases, 427
- (— em dash), **14**, **75**, **81**, **518**
- . (period), 9, 62
 - and italic correction, 92
 - in BibTeX databases, 426
- \. overdot text accent (`), 79, **516**
- \/ (italic correction), **91–93**, **520**
 - and font commands, 92
- / (slash)
 - as divisor, 22, 63, 157
 - as math delimiter (/), 167, 509
 - key, 8
- \: (medspace spacing com.), 190, **513**, 520
- \: (colon), 9, 62
 - as binary relation, 63, 191, 503
- \; (thickspace), 190, **513**, **520**
- \; (semicolon), 9, 62
- < (less than)
 - as binary relation (<), 503
 - key, 17, 63
 - text symbol, 81, **518**
- \= macron text accent (˘), 79, **516**
 - tab set command, 141
- = (equal sign)
 - as binary relation (=), 503
 - in BibTeX database fields, 424
 - key, 8, 63
- \> (tabbing com.), 141, 142
- \> (greater than)
 - as binary relation (>), 503
 - key, 17, 63
 - text symbol, 81, **518**
- ?
 - prompt, 20, 48, 491, **534**
 - question mark, 9, 62
- \? (Spanish question mark), 81, **515**, **518**
- @ (@ at sign), 9, 63, **77**
 - in BibTeX database (bib) files, 424
 - in \index commands, 455, 456
- @-expression, 136
- \@. (blank math symbol for comm. diagrams), 240, 241
- \@. (intersentence space), 67, **520**

- @<<< (stretchable left arrow math sym.), 240
- @= (stretchable equals sign math sym.), 240
- @>>> (stretchable right arrow math sym.), 240
- @AAA (stretchable up arrow math sym.), 241
- @VVV (stretchable down arrow math sym.), 241
- @vert (stretchable double vertical line), 241
- \lceil (start displayed math mode), 18, **152**, **155**
 acts as special brace, 152, 157
- [
 and optional arguments, 15, 27, **69**, **70**, 128, 132, 135
 key, 8, 62
 math delimiter ([]), 167, 509
 with \item commands, 122
 with \newcommand, 370
- \rceil (end displayed math mode), 18, **152**, **155**
 acts as special brace, 152, 157
-]
 and optional arguments, 15, 27, **69**, **70**, 128, 132, 135
 key, 8, 62
 math delimiter ([]), 167, 509
 with \item commands, 122
 with \newcommand, 370
- {
 for required arguments, 8, 14, 19, **69**, **70**, 159, 366, 530
 for scoping, 71–73
 in BIBTeX entries, 424, 427
 key, 9, 63
 must be balanced, 21, 72, 77
 in \index commands, 462
 with \def, 378
- \{
 as math delimiter ({ }), 167, 509
 text brace ({ }), 77, 81, 518
- }
 for required arguments, 8, 14, 19, **69**, **70**, 159, 366, 530
 for scoping, 71–73
 in BIBTeX entries, 424, 427
 key, 9, 63
 must be balanced, 21, 72, 77
 in \index commands, 462
 with \def, 378
- \}
 as math delimiter ({}), 167, 509
- text brace ({}), 77, 81, 518
- ^ (caret)
 for superscripts, 23, 25, **158**–**159**, 161, 182
- key, 9, 63, 77
- \^ (circumflex text accent (^)), 79, 81, 516, 518
- _ (underscore), 9, 77, 81, 518
 in e-mail addresses, 278
- (underscore)
 for subscripts, 23, 25, **158**–**159**, 161, 178, 182
 key, 9, 63
- ` (left single quote), 9, 11, 62, **75**, 519
- `\ (grave text accent), 62, 79, 516
- \| (|| math delimiter), 166, 167, 168, 185, 509
- | (| vertical line), 9, 17, 63, 77, 168, 189
 as binary relation, 188, 189
 as math delimiter, 167, 170, 189, 191, 509
 in \index commands, 454, 457
 in tabular environments, 135
- ~ (tilde)
 key, 9, 11, 63
 tie/unbreakable space, 11, 28, 63, 66, 75, **76**, 99, 520
 absorbs spaces, 76
 in BIBTeX databases, 427
 with cross-references, 28, 257
- \~ (~ tilde text accent), 77, 79, 516, 519
- 9pt (doc. class option), **297**
- 10pt (doc. class option), **104**, **297**, **306**
- 11pt (doc. class option), **297**, **306**
- 12pt (doc. class option), **93**, **297**, **306**
- \\ (new line), **15**, **97**, **98**
 and \kill commands, 142
 breaking lines with, 25, 30, 31, 33, 44, 46, 98, 124, 135, 141, 142, 145, 176, 211, 213, 215, 216, 227, 231, 242, 273–278, 297, 304, 309, 358
 in arguments of commands, **98**
 in environments, **98**, 124, 145
 in text, **98**
 optional argument of, **15**, **98**, **98**, 242
- * (new line), **98**, 242